

OXFORD

# Got it!

## Level 2

Student Book  
& Workbook



Philippa Bowen & Denis Delaney

# Got it!

## Level 2

### Student Book & Workbook

**Philippa Bowen & Denis Delaney**

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Contents

Unit	Vocabulary	Grammar
<b>Welcome</b> page 4	Physical descriptions Music Jobs Movies Transportation Food and drink Geography Feelings and emotions	Simple present / Present progressive <i>be</i> : Simple past Simple past Present progressive for future <i>How long ...? + take</i> some / any with countable / uncountable nouns <i>a lot of / much / many / a little / a few</i> Comparative adjectives Superlative adjectives
<b>1 Nobody lives here</b> page 10	Places around town	<i>must</i> (affirmative and negative) Compounds: <i>some / any / no</i> Compounds: <i>every</i>
<b>2 I have to clean my room</b> page 18	Housework	<i>have to</i> (affirmative, negative, interrogative, and short answers) <i>mustn't / don't have to</i> Gerunds Verb + <i>-ing</i> form
Review A: pages 26–27    Culture club A: page 28    My progress A: page 29		
<b>3 What are you going to do?</b> page 30	Personality	<i>be going to</i> (1) (affirmative, negative, interrogative, and short answers) <i>be going to</i> (2) Verb + infinitive / <i>-ing</i> form
<b>4 What will it be like?</b> page 38	The weather	<i>will</i> : future (affirmative, negative, interrogative, and short answers) <i>will / be going to</i> First conditional
Review B: pages 46–47    Culture club B: page 48    My progress B: page 49		
Remember: pages 50–51		
<b>5 I've done that!</b> page 52	Exciting experiences	Present perfect (affirmative and negative) Past participles <i>been / gone</i> Present perfect (interrogative and short answers) <i>ever / never</i> Present perfect / Simple past
<b>6 I haven't finished it yet</b> page 60	Books	Present perfect + <i>yet</i> and <i>already</i> Present perfect + <i>just</i> Present perfect + <i>for / since</i>
Review C: pages 68–69    Culture club C: page 70    My progress C: page 71		
<b>7 What were they doing?</b> page 72	Crime	Past progressive (affirmative, negative, interrogative, and short answers) <i>while</i> Past progressive and Simple past + <i>when / while</i>
<b>8 I use the Internet to chat</b> page 80	Human achievement	Relative pronouns: <i>who / which / that</i> The infinitive of purpose <i>Which one ...? / Which ones ...?</i>
Review D: pages 88–89    Culture club D: page 90    My progress D: page 91		
Wordlist: pages V1–V3		
Workbook: pages W1–W49		

## Communication

## Skills

Asking for and giving directions

**Pronunciation:** /ɪ/

**Reading:** A magazine article about online safety  
**Listening:** A police officer talking about road safety  
**Speaking:** Road safety rules  
**Writing:** A text about road safety rules

Asking for permission

**Pronunciation:** *have* /hæv/ and *have to* /hæf tə/

**Reading:** A magazine article about active teenagers  
**Listening:** A radio show about lazy teenagers  
**Speaking:** Asking and answering questions about housework  
**Writing:** A text about your weekly schedule

### Curriculum extra A, Chemistry: pages C1–C2

Inviting people to do things

**Pronunciation:** Rising and falling intonation

**Reading:** A magazine article about star signs  
**Listening:** A conversation about star signs  
**Speaking:** Future plans  
**Writing:** An e-mail about future plans

Making offers

**Pronunciation:** //

**Reading:** A magazine article about the environment  
**Listening:** A conversation about the environment  
**Speaking:** Calculating your carbon footprint  
**Writing:** A description of your carbon footprint

### Curriculum extra B, Physics: pages C3–C4

Booking an activity

**Pronunciation:** Strong and weak forms of *have*

**Reading:** A magazine article about a family traveling around the world  
**Listening:** Two teenagers discussing a magazine article  
**Speaking:** Talking about experiences  
**Writing:** A text about exciting experiences

Buying presents / souvenirs

**Pronunciation:** /h/

**Reading:** A short story  
**Listening:** A teenager talking about his reading habits  
**Speaking:** Talking about a book you have read recently  
**Writing:** A book review

### Curriculum extra C, Literature: pages C5–C6

Reporting a crime

**Pronunciation:** /ə/

**Reading:** An extract from *Sherlock Holmes: The Hound of the Baskervilles*  
**Listening:** A police interview with a suspect  
**Speaking:** Talking about your favorite detective stories  
**Writing:** A text about your favorite detective

Discussing what things are for

**Pronunciation:** /ð/

**Reading:** A biography of John Logie Baird  
**Listening:** Teenagers talking about old and new objects  
**Speaking:** Talking about your favorite objects  
**Writing:** A factfile about a famous inventor

### Curriculum extra D, Math: pages C7–C8



## Transportation

**10** Complete the chart with the words in the box.

airplane bike boat bus car  
ferry helicopter motorcycle  
subway taxi train truck

Air		Road	
			
airplane	2 _____		
1 _____	3 _____		
	4 _____		
	5 _____		
	6 _____		
	7 _____		
Rail		Water	
			
8 _____	10 _____		
9 _____	11 _____		

**11 And you?** What forms of transportation do you use?

## Food and drink

**12** Complete Carla's shopping list. Match A and B to make food words.

A	B
1 che	goes
2 cook	atoes
3 mi	na
4 bre	lk
5 man	ies
6 pot	er
7 sal	ese
8 tu	urt
9 wat	ad
10 yog	mon

**13 And you?** What is your favorite food?  
What food don't you like?

## Geography

**14** Match words 1–6 with the geographical features a–f.

- |            |     |           |     |
|------------|-----|-----------|-----|
| 1 desert   | d   | 4 island  | ___ |
| 2 lake     | ___ | 5 volcano | ___ |
| 3 mountain | ___ | 6 river   | ___ |



**15 And you?** Can you name an example for each geographical feature?

## Feelings and emotions

**16** Look at the faces. Choose the correct words.



1 excited / fed up



2 angry / bored



3 happy / sad



4 embarrassed / annoyed



5 confident / frightened



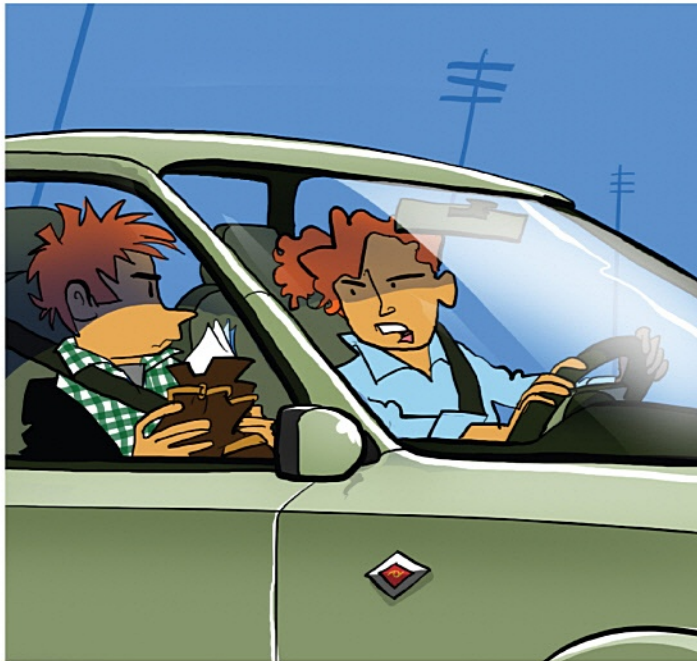
6 nervous / proud

**17 And you?** How do you feel today?

## Grammar

### Simple present / Present progressive

- 1 Complete the sentences with the simple present or present progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.



- 1 Manuel usually **travels** (travel) to school by bus, but this morning he <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) by bus. His mom <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (take) him to school by car.
- 2 Mari and Kana <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the movies every Saturday. They usually <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) love stories, but today they <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a thriller.
- 3 I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) vegetables, but my grandma always <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) them for me. It's lunch time now and I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (give) my vegetables to the dog!
- 4 A <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (Laura / play) any sports on the weekend?  
 B Yes, she does. She sometimes <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball.  
 A <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (she / play) today?  
 B No, she isn't. She isn't on the team today so she <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the game.

2 Answer the questions with true answers.

- How do you usually travel to school?
- How often do you go to the movies?
- Do you like vegetables?
- What sports do you play every week?
- Are you playing sports now?
- What are you doing now?

### be: Simple past

- 3 Robbie Smith is a music journalist. Write questions about his day yesterday. Then look at his schedule and answer the questions.

8 a.m. Breakfast interview with Jay-Z at Café Gitane, New York.

10:30 a.m. La Guardia Airport – New York.

11:30 a.m. Airplane to Philadelphia

1:30 p.m. Lunch with Jack Wilson of *Music Magazine* (Morimoto restaurant)

4 p.m. Visit *The Rock* radio station with Jack Penn's View Hotel

6 p.m. Lady Gaga concert – Susquehanna Bank Center, Camden

Robbie / be / in Camden / at 8 a.m. yesterday?  
**Was Robbie in Camden at 8 a.m. yesterday?**  
**No, he wasn't. He was in New York.**

- 1 Who / be / Robbie with / at 8 a.m?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Where / be / they?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 What time / be / Robbie at the airport?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Where / be / Robbie and Jack Wilson / at 1:30 p.m?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 They / be / in the restaurant / at 4:15 p.m?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Where / be / the Lady Gaga concert in the evening?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Simple past

### 4 Complete the text with the affirmative or negative simple past form of the verbs.

Sandra Carroll  
Police officer

Yesterday morning I

1 \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a school and

2 \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) about road safety.

Then I 3 \_\_\_\_\_

(meet) a friend. We

4 \_\_\_\_\_ (not eat)

lunch in a café. We

5 \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some

sandwiches and we 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) them in

the car. In the afternoon, I 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (write)

some e-mails and I 8 \_\_\_\_\_ (make) some

phone calls. I 9 \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) work at 5:30.

I 10 \_\_\_\_\_ (not go out) in the evening. I

11 \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a relaxing evening at home.



### 5 Write questions about Sandra. Then answer the questions.

Where / Sandra / go yesterday morning?

**Where did Sandra go yesterday morning?**

**She went to a school.**

1 What / she / talk about?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2 Who / Sandra / meet after the talk?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3 What / they / buy for lunch?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Where / they / eat lunch?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5 What / she / do in the afternoon?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6 What time / she / finish work?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the text with the simple past form of the verbs in the box.

become come go join  
make not have not speak start



#### Charlie Chaplin

One hundred years ago, movies were very different. Movie studios **made** them very quickly – sometimes in two or three days! They 1 \_\_\_\_\_ color – the images were black and white – and the actors 2 \_\_\_\_\_. This period of movie history is “The Silent Era”. Charlie Chaplin was one of the great actors of the Silent Era. He 3 \_\_\_\_\_ from London and he 4 \_\_\_\_\_ his acting career in England. In 1910 he 5 \_\_\_\_\_ to the U.S. with a group of British actors. He 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the Keystone Film Company in 1914 and he soon 7 \_\_\_\_\_ a famous actor, writer, and movie director.

### 7 Read the answers. Complete the questions.

What period of movie history **did Charlie Chaplin act in?**

Charlie Chaplin acted in the period of movie history called “The Silent Era”.

1 Where \_\_\_\_\_?

He came from London in England.

2 When \_\_\_\_\_?

He went to the U.S. in 1910.

3 What \_\_\_\_\_ in 1914?

In 1914 he joined the Keystone Film Company.

4 What \_\_\_\_\_?

He became a famous actor, writer, and movie director.



## Present progressive for future

- 8 Write questions with the present progressive. Then answer the questions.

### The Domes

#### Latin America Tour

February 26 <sup>th</sup>	Buenos Aires, Argentina @ River Plate Stadium
February 28 <sup>th</sup>	Rio de Janeiro, Brazil @ Apoteose Stadium
March 2 <sup>nd</sup>	São Paulo, Brazil @ Morumbi Stadium
March 4 <sup>th</sup>	Bogotá, Colombia @ Parque Simon Bolivar
March 6 <sup>th</sup>	Mexico City, Mexico @ Foro Sol

Where / the tour / start?

**Where is the tour starting?**

**It's starting in Buenos Aires.**

- When / the Domes / play / in Colombia?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How many / concerts / they / give / in Brazil?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Where / they / perform / in São Paulo?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Where / they / go / after Brazil?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Where / the tour / finish?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- How many cities / they / visit / in Latin America?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## How long ...? + take

- 9 Write questions. Then answer the questions.

How long / fly from Rio de Janeiro to São Paulo? (1 hour)

**How long does it take to fly from Rio de Janeiro to São Paulo?**

**It takes one hour.**

- How long / drive from Rio de Janeiro to São Paulo? (7 hours)
- How long / travel by airplane from Bogotá to Mexico City? (4 hours 45 minutes)
- How long / go from São Paulo to Buenos Aires by bus? (2 days)

## some / any with countable / uncountable nouns

- 10 What food and drink is there in the refrigerator? Check (✓) or cross (X) the food items, then write sentences.

chicken **There isn't any chicken.**

carrots **There are some carrots.**

- yogurt \_\_\_\_\_
- eggs \_\_\_\_\_
- cheese \_\_\_\_\_
- orange juice \_\_\_\_\_
- potatoes \_\_\_\_\_



- 11 Now write questions and short answers about the food in the refrigerator.

water?

**Is there any water? Yes, there is.**

- cookies? \_\_\_\_\_
- mangoes? \_\_\_\_\_
- salmon? \_\_\_\_\_
- tomatoes? \_\_\_\_\_
- beef? \_\_\_\_\_

## a lot of / much / many / a little / a few

12 Choose the correct answers.



Hi Ava!  
I don't have a lot of / much free time because I always have <sup>1</sup>a lot of / much homework. I study twelve subjects at school. How <sup>2</sup>much / many subjects do you study? I don't watch <sup>3</sup>much / many TV because there aren't <sup>4</sup>much / many good shows on TV at the moment. I watch <sup>5</sup>a little / a few music shows. How <sup>6</sup>much / many TV shows do you watch? I listen to <sup>7</sup>a lot of / much music and I have <sup>8</sup>many / a lot of posters of my favorite bands on my bedroom wall. Do you have <sup>9</sup>a lot of / many posters? On the weekend, I often go for a pizza with my family. My favorite pizza is Four Cheeses. It has <sup>10</sup>much / a lot of cheese on it!

## Comparative adjectives

13 Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives.

Luiza is **older** (old) than Beatriz.

- Chicago is \_\_\_\_\_ (big) than Boston.
- Traveling by bus is \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than traveling by train in South America.
- Elephants are \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) than giraffes.
- San Francisco is \_\_\_\_\_ (far) from Mexico than San Diego.
- Oxford is a \_\_\_\_\_ (safe) city than Detroit.
- Is Colombia \_\_\_\_\_ (large) than Bolivia?
- A documentary is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) than a quiz show.
- Hawaii is \_\_\_\_\_ (hot) than Alaska.

## Superlative adjectives

14 Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives. Then write true answers.

Who is the **oldest** (old) person in your family?  
My grandma. She's 75 years old.

- What is \_\_\_\_\_ (difficult) subject for you at school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is \_\_\_\_\_ (easy) subject for you at school?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Who is \_\_\_\_\_ (good) singer in your country?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What was \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) movie you saw last year?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- What is \_\_\_\_\_ (famous) tourist attraction in your country?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Who is \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) person in your family?  
\_\_\_\_\_

15 Complete the geography quiz with the comparative or the superlative form of the adjectives. Are the statements true (✓) or false (x)?


## Geo quiz!

T F

- |  |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Mount Everest is _____ (tall) mountain in the world.           | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 The Pacific Ocean is _____ (deep) than the Atlantic Ocean.     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 South America is _____ (big) than North America.               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 The Mediterranean Sea is _____ (large) the Gulf of Mexico.     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 The Vatican City is _____ (small) country in the world.        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 China is _____ (populated) than the U.S.A.                     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 The River Nile is _____ (long) river in Africa.                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 The Atacama Desert in Chile is _____ (dry) place in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 1

# Nobody lives here

1  **Read and listen** Check (✓) the correct description of the text.

- a an educational leaflet     b a tourist leaflet     c an online store

2 **Comprehension** Answer the questions.

- 1 When was Calico a busy town?
- 2 What is unusual about it today?
- 3 What can you see in Main Street?
- 4 How can you travel around Calico?
- 5 Where can you stay in Calico?
- 6 Why can't you visit the old mines?

## CALICO A CALIFORNIAN GHOST TOWN

What was life like during the American silver and gold rush? How did people live? Come to the historic town of Calico and find out!

In the late 19<sup>th</sup> century people from all over the world traveled to California to look for silver and gold. They built small mining towns everywhere in the area. Calico was once a busy silver mining town with 500 silver mines. It had a population of 1,200 people and there were stores, hotels, cafés, a church, and a school. When the silver rush ended at the start of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, everybody left Calico and today nobody lives there!

### Attractions

Calico is now a major tourist attraction. Walk down Main Street and look at the old stores and cafés. Turn right after Lil's saloon and visit Maggie's Mine, or take a ride around town on a mining train. And why not stay a few days? Calico has a luxury campground.

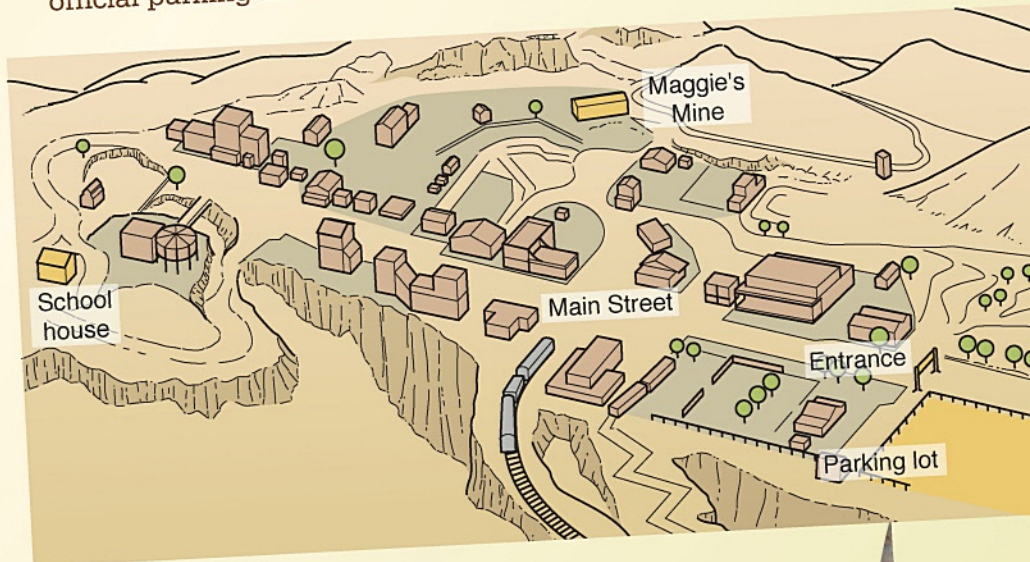
Calico has something for everyone! Come and discover it!



### Visitors' guidelines

Please follow the town rules

- 1 The old mines in the area are very dangerous. You mustn't go near them.
- 2 You must keep your animals under control.
- 3 You mustn't drive in the town. Leave your car in the official parking lot.
- 4 You mustn't enter the private buildings or take anything from the town.
- 5 You must use the official picnic areas and you mustn't start fires.
- 6 You mustn't leave trash in the area. Take it home with you.



## Language focus

3 Look at the signs. Then read the text and write the rules.



1 You mustn't leave trash.



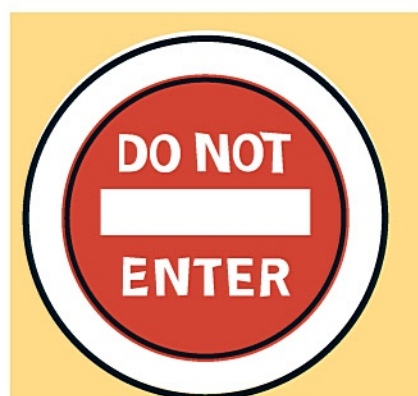
2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

4 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences with the missing words.


- 1 In the late 19<sup>th</sup> century people built small mining towns everywhere in the area.
- 2 At the start of the 20<sup>th</sup> century \_\_\_\_\_ left Calico.
- 3 Today \_\_\_\_\_ lives there.
- 4 You mustn't take \_\_\_\_\_ from the town.
- 5 The town has \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_!

5 **Focus on you** Write what you must and mustn't do every day. Use the verbs in the box.

be late for school   do my homework   go to school   stay out late  
throw trash in the street   watch TV all day

*I must go to school every day.*

*I mustn't stay out late.*

6 **Pairwork** Tell your partner what you must and mustn't do every day. 

## Places around town

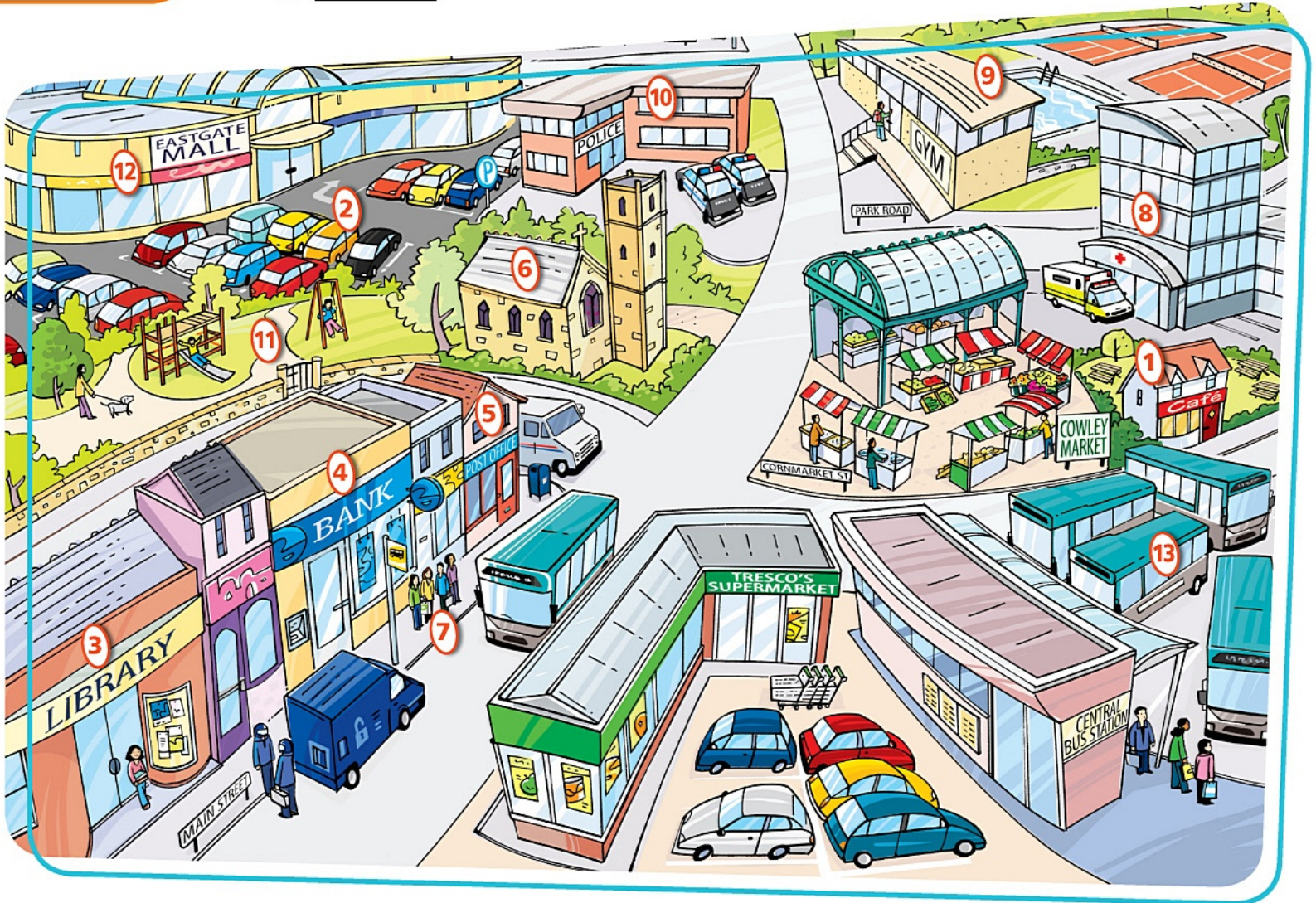
1  Match the words with the places on the map. Then listen and repeat.

bank bus station bus stop café church hospital library park  
parking lot police station post office shopping mall sports center

- |               |          |          |          |
|---------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 <u>café</u> | 2 _____  | 3 _____  | 4 _____  |
| 5 _____       | 6 _____  | 7 _____  | 8 _____  |
| 9 _____       | 10 _____ | 11 _____ | 12 _____ |
| 13 _____      |          |          |          |

## Look!

You borrow books from a **library**.  
You buy books from a **bookstore**.



2 Read the sentences and identify the places in the picture in exercise 1.

It's between the library and the post office. the bank

- 1 It's in front of the shopping mall. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's behind the bank. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It's next to the café. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's on the corner of Main Street near the bank. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It's opposite the sports center. \_\_\_\_\_

3 **Pairwork** Look at the map in exercise 1 and write three dialogues. 

bank / post office

A Excuse me. Where's the bank, please?

B It's on Main Street. It's near the post office.

- |                            |                  |                           |
|----------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 park / shopping mall     | 3 library / bank | 5 church / police station |
| 2 hospital / sports center | 4 market / café  | 6 park / bank             |

## must

Affirmative	
I / you / he / she / it / we / you / they	must stop
Negative	
I / you / he / she / it / we / you / they	mustn't (must not) stop

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.  
You **must come** home now.  
You **mustn't play** computer games.
- We use *must* / *mustn't* for <sup>1</sup>rules / requests.
- must* / *mustn't* are the <sup>2</sup>same / different for all persons.
- must* / *mustn't* are followed by the infinitive <sup>3</sup>with / without *to*.

Rules p.W2

- 1 Complete the rules for a school test. Use *must* and *mustn't*.

### Test rules

- You **mustn't** talk. (X)  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ write your name on the test. (✓)  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ use a dictionary. (X)  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ use a blue or black pen. (✓)  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ leave the room. (X)  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ use your cell phones. (X)

- 2 What do these signs mean? Complete the rules with *You must* / *You mustn't*.



- You mustn't** turn left.
- \_\_\_\_\_ stop.
- \_\_\_\_\_ park your car here.
- \_\_\_\_\_ turn right.
- \_\_\_\_\_ smoke here.
- \_\_\_\_\_ drive more than 50 km/h.

- 3 Complete the swimming pool rules. Use *must* or *mustn't* and the verbs in the box.

buy eat listen take use walk

## SPICEBALL SPORTS CENTER

### SWIMMING POOL RULES

You **must buy** a ticket at reception.

- You \_\_\_\_\_ a shower before you enter the swimming pool.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ or drink in the swimming pool.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ slowly near the swimming pool. Don't run!
- You \_\_\_\_\_ cell phones in the swimming pool.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ to loud music.

- 4 Rewrite the orders.

Don't park your car here!  
**You mustn't park your car here.**  
 Stop at a red traffic light.  
**You must stop at a red traffic light.**


- Don't skateboard in the park!  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Buy a ticket before you get on the train.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Don't talk loudly in the library.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Change your shoes before you go into the gym.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Leave your parking ticket in the car window.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Finished?

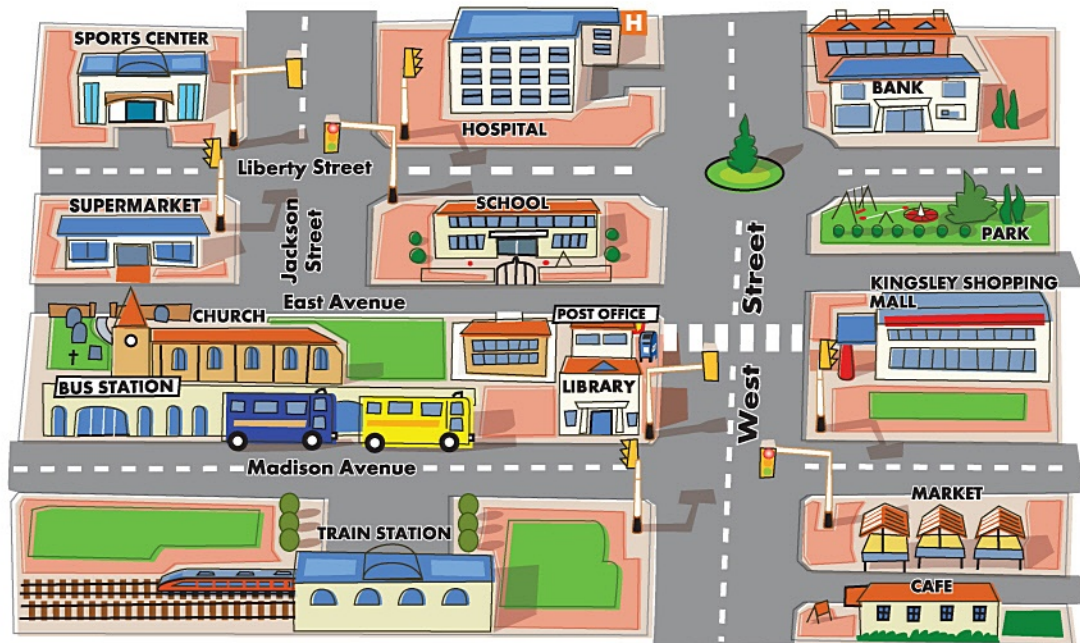
What **must** and **mustn't** you do at your school?  
 Write five sentences.

**You mustn't eat in class.**  
**You must listen to the teacher.**

## Asking for and giving directions

- 1  Complete the dialogue with the words in the box. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

bank ~~excuse me~~ park roundabout traffic lights



At the bus station

A Excuse me. How do I get to the bank, please?

B Go down Madison Avenue as far as the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Turn left and go up West Street. Go straight on at the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and the <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is on the right. It's opposite the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A Thanks.

### You ask


Excuse me. How do I get to ..., please?

Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to ..., please?


### You answer

Go straight on at ... / Cross over the road ...  
Turn right / left.  
Go down the road to ...  
Take the first / second turning on the right / left.  
It's on the right / left.

Go up / down this road as far as / to ...  
Go to the end of this / the road.

- 2  **Pronunciation** Listen to the pronunciation of the letter *r*. Then listen and repeat.

church far library market over park right road street turn

- 3  Listen to three people giving directions to the places below. Follow the directions on the map in exercise 1 and write the names of the places.

- 1 From the sports center to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 From the hospital to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 From the shopping mall to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 **Pairwork** Look at the map in exercise 1 and write two dialogues. Then practice your dialogues. 

- 1 You are at the market. Ask for directions to the church.
- 2 You are at the school. Ask for directions to the train station.

## Compounds: some / any / no

Person	Thing	Place
some someone / somebody	something	somewhere
any anyone / anybody	anything	anywhere
no no one / nobody	nothing	nowhere

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then complete the rules with **affirmative, negative, and interrogative**.

There's **someone** coming.

I can't do **anything**!

Did you go **anywhere** on the weekend?

I have **nothing** to do.

- We use compounds of **some** in <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sentences.
- We use compounds of **any** in <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sentences.
- We use compounds of **no** with the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ form of a verb.

Rules pp.W2–W3

### 1 Choose the correct answers.

I'm not doing nothing / **anything** today.

- I don't know anyone / no one here.
- There's something / anything I want to ask you.
- Are you going somewhere / anywhere exciting on the weekend?
- No one / Anyone ever listens to me!
- Where's Ruby? She isn't anywhere / nowhere in the library.
- There isn't someone / anyone in the bank.

### 2 Complete the sentences with **some, any, and no** compounds.

Look! There's **someone** at the door.

- Let's go \_\_\_\_\_ nice on Sunday.
- There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator to eat! Let's order a pizza.
- I didn't see \_\_\_\_\_ from school at the concert.
- I'm bored! I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ to do.
- This town is boring. There's \_\_\_\_\_ to go.
- Where's the dog? I can't see him \_\_\_\_\_.

## Compounds: every

Person	Thing	Place
every everyone / everybody	everything	everywhere

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternatives.

**Everybody** makes mistakes.

We didn't go **everywhere** in Paris.

Do you have **everything** for your vacation?

- We can use compounds of **every** in:  
a affirmative  / b negative  /  
c interrogative  sentences.
- We use **everyone / everybody** with a  
a singular  / b plural  verb.

Rules p.W3

### 3 Complete the sentences with **everyone / everybody, everything, and everywhere**.

**Everyone** in my class is fourteen years old.

- I had a fantastic time! I went \_\_\_\_\_!
- Maria's very popular. \_\_\_\_\_ likes her.
- Did you eat \_\_\_\_\_ at lunch today?
- A Is \_\_\_\_\_ here today?  
B No, Karen is absent.
- A Here are the ingredients for the apple pie.  
B Do we have \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_ in my family likes fish.

### 4 Game! Find people who did the things below. Write their names in the chart.

Find someone who ...	Name
went somewhere last weekend	
sent a text message yesterday	
met someone after school yesterday	

- Did you go anywhere last weekend, Alan?  
B No, I didn't.
- Did you go anywhere last weekend, Isabel?  
C Yes, I did. I went to the mountains.

### Finished?

Look at the list in exercise 4 again. What things did you do and what things didn't you do?

*I didn't go anywhere last weekend, but I sent someone a text message yesterday ...*



# Stay safe online!

**E**veryone loves the Internet! You can do a lot of great things online: play games, download music, or read about your favorite band. However, the Internet isn't always safe. Nobody controls the information on it and everyone can use it. Here are a few rules to keep you safe online.

- You must keep your passwords secret. Don't share them with your friends and don't store them in a file on your computer. People can use your passwords to enter websites that you use and find information about you.
- You mustn't open a file, message, or photo from someone you don't know. Sometimes these things contain viruses and they can damage your computer.
- Only give personal information on safe sites. You mustn't give anyone your name, address, or phone number if you don't know them.
- You mustn't put your photos on public sites. Anyone can look at them and sometimes people copy photos from the Internet and use them for the wrong things.
- If someone on the Internet asks you to meet them, you must say no and tell your parents. Some people don't tell the truth on the Internet and invent information. It can be very dangerous to meet online "friends". You must tell your parents or an adult if you aren't sure about anything.



## Reading


### 1 Before you read Discuss the questions with the class.

- 1 What do you use the Internet for?
- 2 What Internet sites do you look at?

### 2 Read the text. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What different things can you do online?
- 2 Why isn't the Internet always safe?
- 3 Why must you keep your passwords secret?
- 4 What do files or photos sometimes contain?
- 5 When is it safe to give personal information online?
- 6 When isn't it safe to give personal information online?
- 7 Why is it a bad idea to put your photos on public sites?
- 8 Why is it a bad idea to meet online "friends"?


## Listening

- 3  Listen to Denzel Wilcox, a police officer, speak about how to be safe on the roads today. Then complete the Dos and Don'ts for cyclists. Use the words in the box.

clothes correct side of the road friends hand signals  
helmet music road signs shoes

Do	Don't
You must wear a helmet.	

## Speaking

- 4 **Pairwork** Look at the following categories of road users. Discuss the rules of the road for each category. Make a list of two rules, one with *must* and one with *mustn't*, for each person. Then present your list to the class. 



- A Pedestrians must look left and right before crossing the road.  
B Pedestrians mustn't cross the road when a traffic light is red.

## Writing

- 5 Choose one of the categories in exercise 4 and write a short paragraph describing road safety rules. Remember to talk about general road rules and include the points below:

- clothes
- cell phones
- music
- eating and drinking

1  **Read and listen** Match the paragraphs with the contents.

- |               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Paragraph 1 | a The hosts           |
| 2 Paragraph 2 | b Housework advice    |
| 3 Paragraph 3 | c This week's episode |
| 4 Paragraph 4 | d The TV series       |



Aggie

Kim

**Before**



**After**



1 **Kim Woodburn and Aggie Mackenzie** **Kare on a mission.** They want to clean the world! Kim and Aggie are the stars of the TV series *How Clean Is Your House?* In the show the two ladies go to dirty homes, clean them, and teach people how to do housework. The show is already a hit in the U.K, Germany, France, Spain, and the U.S. Kim says the show is a success because cleaning is an important part of everyone's life.

- 2 Before Kim and Aggie were TV hosts, Kim was a professional cleaner and Aggie worked for a magazine. Doing housework is their passion. Aggie likes cooking and she loves cleaning the kitchen, but she hates making beds. Kim likes doing the dusting, but she hates cleaning the bathtub. "It's like cleaning seven sinks!" she says.
- 3 In this week's episode of *How Clean Is Your House?* Kim and Aggie visit the house of four students. They hate doing housework. They never wash the dishes, clean the bathroom, make the beds, or take out the trash. Their house is a mess! Teaching them the basics of housework isn't easy, but Kim and Aggie succeed and in twenty-four hours the students have a clean house.

- 4 So what are the secrets to a clean house?

**REPETITION!** You have to clean every day. You don't have to spend a lot of time cleaning - thirty minutes a day is enough.

**ORGANIZATION!** Everything has to have a place.

**ELIMINATION!** You have to throw out things you don't need or use.

## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 What is Kim and Aggie's mission?
- 2 What do Kim and Aggie do in their TV series?
- 3 What did Kim and Aggie do before they were TV hosts?
- 4 Where do Kim and Aggie go in this week's episode?
- 5 Why is the house a mess?
- 6 What are the three key words in housework?

## Language focus

### 3 Hana is one of the students in this week's episode of *How Clean Is Your House?* Listen and complete the sentences with *have to* or *don't have to*.

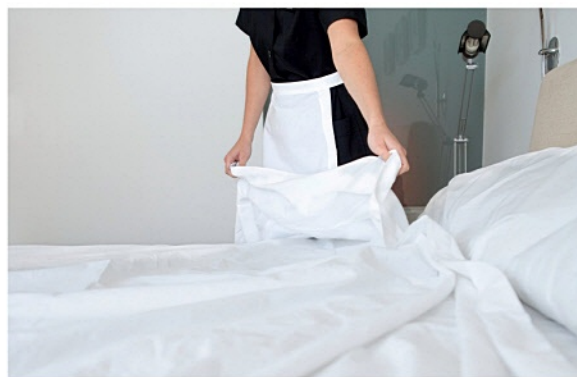
You **have to** do some housework every day.

- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_ make the beds, clean the kitchen and bathroom, and do the dusting.
- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_ throw out things you don't need.
- 3 When you do housework everyday you \_\_\_\_\_ spend a lot of time cleaning.
- 4 You \_\_\_\_\_ spend a lot of money on cleaning products.
- 5 Kim and Aggie say you \_\_\_\_\_ take care of your house and enjoy it!

### 4 Look at the photos and read the text again. What chores do Kim and Aggie like doing and hate doing?



1 Aggie loves cleaning the kitchen.



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_


### 5 Focus on you Write a dialogue about what you like doing and hate doing. Use the words in the box.

clean the bathtub   clean the kitchen   cook   do housework  
do the dusting   go to the library   make your bed   take out the trash

- A I hate doing housework.  
B So do I.  
A I like cooking.  
B Really? I don't!

### 6 Pairwork Practice the dialogues from exercise 5.

## Housework

- 1  Listen and match the words in the box with the pictures. Then listen and repeat.

clean my room    clean the bathroom    do the cooking    do the dusting  
do the grocery shopping    do the ironing    do the washing    lay / clear the table  
load / unload the dishwasher    ~~make my bed~~    take out the trash    wash the dishes


## 1 - make my bed



- 2 Complete the sentences with the verbs from exercise 1.

I always clear the table after lunch.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ my bed when I get up in the morning.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ the grocery shopping at the supermarket.
- 3 I usually \_\_\_\_\_ my bedroom on the weekend.
- 4 My dad \_\_\_\_\_ out the trash every evening.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ the dishwasher after dinner and my sister \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 6 My dad sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking on the weekend.
- 7 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes after lunch.
- 8 My mom listens to music when she \_\_\_\_\_ the ironing.

- 3 **Pairwork** Ask your partner how often he / she does the housework in exercise 1. Use the expressions in the box. 

every day    never    often    once / twice a week    rarely

- A How often do you clean your room?  
B I clean my room once a week. How often do you do the ironing?  
A I rarely do the ironing.

## have to Affirmative and negative

	Affirmative	Negative
I / you / we / you / they	have to go	don't have to go
he / she / it	has to go	doesn't have to go

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.  
I **have to** stay in my room.  
You **don't have to** clean your room.
- **have to** and **don't have to** are followed by the **-ing form / infinitive without to** of the main verb.

Rules p.W8

### 1 Jenny and Simon go to different schools. Write sentences about what they have to or don't have to do.

Jenny **has to wear** (wear) a uniform. (✓)  
Simon **doesn't have to wear** (wear) a uniform. (✗)

- Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ (do) a test every week. (✗)
- Jenny and Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lunch at school. (✓)
- Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (do) two hours of homework every day. (✓)
- Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (play) sports on Saturday. (✓)
- Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at school at 7:00 a.m. (✗)
- Jenny and Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (stand up) when a teacher comes into the classroom. (✗)

### 2 Do you have to or don't you have to do these things at your school? Write sentences.

wear a uniform?

**I have to wear a uniform. / I don't have to wear a uniform.**

- Have lunch at school?
- Do a test every week?
- Play sports on Saturday?
- Do two hours of homework every day?
- Switch off cell phones during lessons?
- Stand up when a teacher enters the classroom?

## have to Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	Short answers	
	Affirmative	Negative
Do I / you have to go?	Yes, I / you do.	No, I / you don't.
Do we / you / they have to go?	Yes, we / you / they do.	No, we / you / they don't.
Does he / she / it have to go?	Yes, he / she / it does.	No, he / she / it doesn't.

Rules p.W8

### 3 Write questions about what Ryan and Jess have to and don't have to do. Then answer the questions.

Jess / do the dusting? (✓)

**Does Jess have to do the dusting? Yes, she does.**

- Ryan / do the ironing (✓)
- Jess and Ryan / wash the dishes (✓)
- Jess and Ryan / lay the table (✗)
- Jess / do the washing (✗)
- Ryan / take out the trash (✓)



### 4 Complete the questions with have to and the verbs in the box. Then answer the questions.

be be clean do get up go

What time **do you have to go** to bed on school nights?

**I have to go to bed at 9:30 p.m.**

- How many hours of homework \_\_\_\_\_ every day?
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ home in the evenings on school days?
- How often \_\_\_\_\_ your bedroom?
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning on school days?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ to drive a car in your country?

### Finished?

Write a list of the housework you have to or don't have to do.

**I don't have to do the cooking.**

## Asking for permission

### 1 Listen and complete the sentences. Then listen and repeat.

1  
 Jennifer Mom, can I go to Susan's house?  
 Mom I'm sorry, you can't, Jennifer. You have to clean your room.  
 Jennifer But Mom we have to do our science project.  
 Mom Jennifer, your room is a mess!  
 Jennifer But doing my science project is more important.  
 Mom Clean your room first. Then you can go to Susan's house.  
 Jennifer Mom! I hate cleaning my room!  
 Mom Jennifer!  
 Jennifer wants to \_\_\_\_\_.



2  
 Kenny Miss Harper.  
 Miss Harper Yes, what is it, Kenny?  
 Kenny May I go to the bathroom, please?  
 Miss Harper Not now, Kenny. You have to wait.  
 Kenny wants to \_\_\_\_\_.



### Look!

*May I ...?* is more formal than *Can I ...?*

#### You ask

#### You answer

Can I go to Susan's house, (please)?	Yes, you can. / No, you can't. / No, I'm sorry, you can't.
May I go to the bathroom, (please)?	Yes, of course. / Sure. / OK.

### 2 Pronunciation Listen to the pronunciation of **have** /hæv/ and **have to** /'hæf tə/. Then listen and repeat.

In the expression **have to** the /v/ sound in *have* becomes an /f/ sound.

/hæv/ I **have** lunch at school.

/'hæf tə/ I **have to** finish my homework.

### 3 Listen and write (a) /hæv/ or (b) /'hæf tə/. Then listen and repeat.

1 a      2 \_\_\_      3 \_\_\_  
 4 \_\_\_      5 \_\_\_      6 \_\_\_

### 4 **Pairwork** Write a dialogue for these situations. Then practice your dialogues.

- You ask your friend if you can use his / her cell phone. You say that you have to send a text message and you don't have any credit. Your friend agrees.
- You ask your mom if you can go to your friend's house. You explain that you have to study for a history test tomorrow. Your mom says no. You have to wash the dishes and finish your homework.

## mustn't / don't have to

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Choose the correct alternative.
- It's Sunday tomorrow. We <sup>1</sup> *mustn't / don't have to* go to school.
- The traffic lights are green. You <sup>2</sup> *mustn't / don't have to* cross the road.

Rules p.W9

### 1 Complete the sentences with *mustn't* or *don't / doesn't have to*.

You *don't have to* pass a test to ride a bike.

You *mustn't* use your cell phone in class.



- You \_\_\_\_\_ copy during the test!
- It's Sunday! I \_\_\_\_\_ get up early.
- The movie starts at 8 p.m. Hurry up! We \_\_\_\_\_ be late!
- You \_\_\_\_\_ speak to the driver on the bus. It's dangerous.
- It's free! You \_\_\_\_\_ buy a ticket!
- He's a millionaire. He \_\_\_\_\_ work.
- Cooking pasta is easy. You \_\_\_\_\_ be a chef!

## Gerunds

### Think!

- Circle the gerunds in the sentences.
- 1 Drinking a lot of coffee is bad for you.
- 2 Doing housework is boring.
- 3 Learning a new language is interesting.

Rules p.W9

### 2 Complete the sentences with the gerund form of the verbs in the box.

do go learn *play* play read watch

*Playing* chess is difficult.

- \_\_\_\_\_ homework is boring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ languages is useful.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a book is more interesting than \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
- \_\_\_\_\_ to a foreign country is exciting.
- \_\_\_\_\_ sports is good for you.

## Verb + -ing form

	love	
	like	
	enjoy	
I	prefer	cooking.
	don't mind	
	don't like	
	hate	

Rules p.W9

### 3 Write sentences.

I / love / go to the movies.

*I love going to the movies.*

- He / hate / play chess.
- You / like / read comics?
- We / not mind / go bowling / but / we / hate / skateboard.
- My dad / enjoy / listen to classical music.
- I / not like / watch documentaries.

### 4 Game! How well do you know your partner? Complete the table with faces.

😊 = LIKE    😐 = DON'T MIND    ☹️ = HATE

**YOUR PARTNER**

Doing the cooking	
Washing the dishes	
Going shopping	
Swimming	
Playing sports	
Listening to music	
Going to the movies	
Getting up early	

Compare your answers and give yourself 1 point for each correct answer.

*You like swimming.*

*No, I don't! I hate swimming!*

#### Your score

- 6-8 Good job! You know your partner very well.  
 3-5 OK. You have to learn to listen more.  
 1-2 May I introduce you to ... .

#### Write about your partner's likes and dislikes.

*Ryo doesn't mind washing the dishes, but he hates going shopping ...*



# Lazy teenagers? Think again!



## Are today's teenagers lazy?

According to a recent survey, teenagers spend a total of fifty hours doing after-school activities, homework, and chores.

Teenager, Jessica Watson, isn't surprised. "I go to school from 8:30 a.m. to 3:30 p.m. But after

school I don't go home and watch TV. I'm on

the school volleyball team so I have to practice twice a week on Tuesdays and Fridays. I also go to ballet lessons on Thursdays."

At home Jessica helps with the housework. "Both my parents work and they often get home late. I have to clean my room, take out the trash, and do the dusting. Mom does the grocery shopping and the cooking, and Dad washes the dishes."

Jessica also spends a lot of time doing homework. "I have to do two or three hours of homework every night," says Jessica. This is normal for teenagers today. On average, they spend about nine hours a week doing homework.

On Saturdays and Sundays, Jessica has a part-time job in a clothes store. "Mom and Dad don't give me an allowance, so I have to work to get money for clothes, CDs, and going out with my friends. I like spending the money, but I hate getting up early for work on weekends."

Jessica hates it when adults say teenagers are lazy. "Adults think we watch TV, listen to music, and send text messages all the time. But this isn't true. I enjoy doing those things, but I do a lot of other things, too."



## Reading


### 1 Before you read Discuss the questions with a partner.

- 1 What do you do in your free time?
- 2 Do you have to help at home?

### 2 Read the text. Then answer the questions.

- 1 How many hours a week do teenagers spend doing after-school activities, homework, and housework?
- 2 What after-school activities does Jessica do?
- 3 How often does she go to volleyball practice?
- 4 What housework does she do?
- 5 Who does the grocery shopping, cooking, and who washes the dishes in her family?
- 6 How many hours do teenagers spend doing homework in a week?
- 7 What does Jessica do on weekends?
- 8 What do adults generally think of teenagers? Is this true?

## Listening

- 3  Listen to the conversation about boys and housework. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

Robert says that boys don't do housework. **F**  
*Robert says that boys do lots of housework.*

- 1 Robert doesn't have to clean his room.
- 2 Robert doesn't do the cooking.
- 3 Robert usually clears the table.
- 4 Julie says that boys do lots of housework.
- 5 Julie cleans her brother's room.
- 6 Yesterday Julie's brother had to wash the dishes and take the dog for a walk.

## Speaking

- 4 **Pairwork** Ask and answer questions about housework. Ask your partner if he / she likes doing these jobs. 

Do you have to ...?

- make your bed
- wash the car
- lay / clear the table
- take out the trash
- clean your room
- do the cooking
- take the dog for a walk
- do the ironing
- wash the dishes
- load / unload the dishwasher
- do the washing

A Do you have to make your bed?

B Yes, I do.

A Do you like making your bed?

B No, I don't. I hate making my bed.

- 5 **Now prepare a short report about your partner.**

- Carlos / Isabel has to ...
- He / She doesn't mind ...
- He / She likes ...
- He / She hates ...
- He / She enjoys ...

## Writing

- 6 **Complete the chart with information about your weekly schedule. Then write a short paragraph about what you do. Use the text on page 24 as a model.**

How many hours do you spend	Hours a week
• at school?	_____
• doing homework?	_____
• doing after-school activities (sports, clubs, music, etc.)?	_____
• doing housework?	_____

*I'm not a lazy teenager! I have to ...*



## Vocabulary

1 Look at the things Lisa wants to do. Complete the names of the places she needs to visit.

<p>Things to do</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 get some money</li> <li>2 borrow a book</li> <li>3 play tennis</li> <li>4 visit Jane and her new baby</li> <li>5 send a letter</li> <li>6 buy new clothes</li> <li>7 have lunch</li> <li>8 sit in the sun</li> <li>9 buy some bus tickets</li> <li>10 get the bus home</li> </ol>	<p>Places</p> <p>b<u>an</u>k</p> <p>l<u>ib</u>rary</p> <p>s<u>h</u>opping c<u>en</u>ter</p> <p>h<u>o</u>tel</p> <p>p<u>o</u>st o<u>ff</u>ice</p> <p>s<u>h</u>opping m<u>all</u></p> <p>c<u>af</u>é</p> <p>p<u>ar</u>k</p> <p>b<u>u</u>s s<u>ta</u>tion</p> <p>b<u>u</u>s s<u>to</u>p</p>
--	--

2 What housework tasks do these objects relate to? Complete the verbs.



1 do the cooking



2 do the \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_ the trash



4 wash \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_ the table



6 \_\_\_\_\_ the grocery shopping



7 do the \_\_\_\_\_



8 do \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

3 Complete the rules with *must* / *mustn't* and the verbs in the box.

cycle leave play take use wait walk



You must wait here.



1 You \_\_\_\_\_ photos.



2 You \_\_\_\_\_ soccer in the park.



3 You \_\_\_\_\_ the trash cans.



4 You \_\_\_\_\_ here.



5 You \_\_\_\_\_ trash on the bus.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct compound of *some* / *any* / *no* / *every*.

Mari said something interesting.

- 1 They didn't go \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday. They stayed at home.
- 2 Julia met \_\_\_\_\_ nice yesterday.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ went to Harry's party. It was great!
- 4 There's \_\_\_\_\_ good on TV tonight. Let's watch a DVD.
- 5 Is \_\_\_\_\_ ready? Let's go!
- 6 My cell phone is \_\_\_\_\_ in the living room, but I can't find it.

5 Read the advertisement. Then complete the e-mail with *have to* / *don't have to* and the verbs in the box.

ask bring ~~be~~ have pay pay

**SOCCER SUMMER SCHOOL!**  
 Ridgewell Sports Center (July 11 – 15)  
 Beginners are welcome.  
 Price: \$80 per person. Price includes lunch and drinks.  
 Bring your own sneakers, shorts, and T-shirts.  
 Participants must have a medical certificate.

Hi, Jason  
 Fantastic news! There's a Soccer Summer School at Ridgewell Sports Center in July! You **don't have to be** good at soccer – beginners are welcome. You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ \$80, but you <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ extra for lunch. You <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your own sneakers, shorts, and T-shirts and you <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a medical certificate. I really want to go, but I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my dad for the money! Are you interested?  
 Ross

6 Complete the sentences with *mustn't*, *don't have to*, or *doesn't have to*.

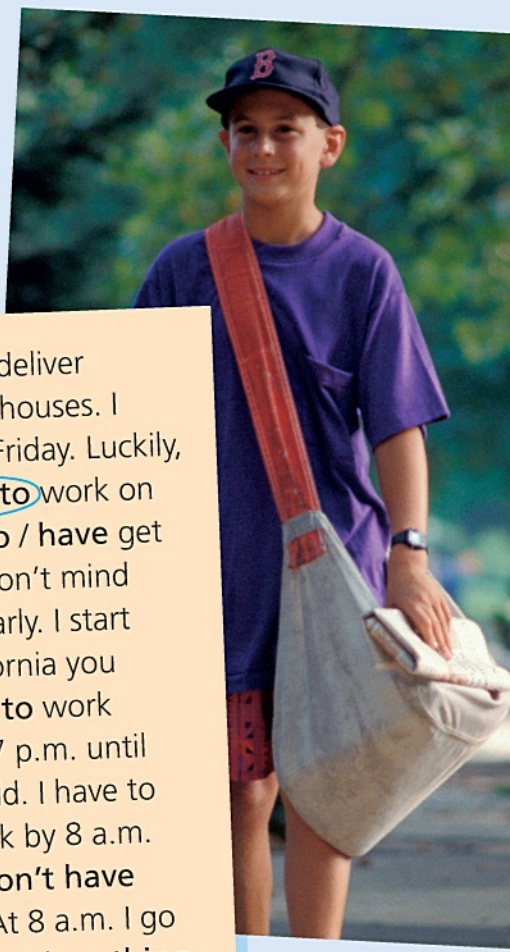
- I **don't have to** iron my clothes. Mom irons them.  
 You **mustn't** leave dirty dishes in the sink!
- Be careful! You \_\_\_\_\_ use a hot iron for this sweater. It's very delicate!
  - I have to lay the table, but I \_\_\_\_\_ clear it.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ walk dogs in the park. It is a park for children only.
  - Mom \_\_\_\_\_ cook on Sunday. Dad cooks lunch.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ run in the school corridors.
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ wash the dishes. We have a dishwasher!

7 Write sentences.

- I / not mind / do / housework.  
**I don't mind doing housework.**
- Dad / hate / do / the shopping
  - we enjoy / work / in the yard
  - you / like / read?
  - learn / English / not be / difficult
  - I prefer / swim / to / play tennis
  - your mom / enjoy / cook?
  - Emi / not mind / study
  - watch / TV / be / fun

**Got it?**

8 Read about Callum's job. Then choose the correct answers.



I have a part-time job. I deliver newspapers to people's houses. I work Monday through Friday. Luckily, I **mustn't / don't have to** work on the weekend. I <sup>1</sup>**have to / have** get up at 6:30 a.m., but I don't mind <sup>2</sup>**to get / getting up** early. I start work at 7 a.m. In California you <sup>3</sup>**mustn't / don't have to** work before 7 a.m. or after 7 p.m. until you are sixteen years old. I have to <sup>4</sup>**finish / finishing** work by 8 a.m. because I <sup>5</sup>**mustn't / don't have to** be late for school. At 8 a.m. I go home, have <sup>6</sup>**something / anything** to eat, and get ready for school. <sup>7</sup>**Work / Working** in the mornings is sometimes difficult, but I love <sup>8</sup>**do / doing** my paper round and I'm saving a lot of money!

9 Answer the questions.

- What does Callum do before he goes to school?
- How many days a week does he have to work?
- What time does he have to get up?
- Why does he have to finish his job by 8 a.m.?
- What does he do at 8 a.m.?
- Why does Sam love doing his paper round?

# New York!

New York is a famous city on the east coast of the United States. Today it's very big and it has a population of eight million people, but in the 17<sup>th</sup> century it was very small. Only 270 people lived there! The city started on an island in the Hudson River. A group of Native Americans settled on the island and called it "Manhatta". This means "large island" in their language. Today the island's name is Manhattan. It is one of the five boroughs of New York. The other four boroughs are Staten Island, Brooklyn, Queens, and the Bronx. In 1624, the Dutch arrived in Manhatta and soon after, in 1664, the British took control of the area and called the city New York. In the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries a lot of people from Europe and Asia

came to America to start a new life. A lot of immigrants settled in New York. People with the same nationality often lived in the same areas. For example, Chinese people created Chinatown and Italians created Little Italy.

Today there are also a lot of Hispanic people in the city. They come from Central and South America and they speak Spanish. Spanish is the first language in some areas of the city, but New York residents speak 170 different languages and 36% of the population was born in a different country! The mix of nationalities means that New York is a very exciting place. There is always something to do night and day. In fact, New York is also often called "the city that never sleeps!"



## 1 Before you read Answer the question. Then read the text and check your answer.

Which of these names is an old name for New York City?

- a Manhatta                      b New Hudson                      c Little Italy

## 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is New York?
- 2 What is the population of the city?
- 3 What is the name of its river?
- 4 What are the five boroughs of New York?
- 5 Where did people travel from in the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries?
- 6 Where do a lot of the immigrants come from today?
- 7 What language is the first language in some areas of New York?
- 8 How many languages do New York residents speak?

## 3 Focus on you Write about a city that you know well. Answer the questions.

- What is the name of the city and where is it?
- What do you know about its history?
- What are the names of the different areas of the city?
- Does it have a river? What is its name?
- What nationalities are the people and what is the first language?

## Speaking and writing

**1** I can identify different buildings on a map. A2

bank

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**4** I can identify different types of housework. A2

clean the bathroom

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**2** I can ask for and give directions. B1

Excuse me. How do I get to the park?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**5** I can ask for and give permission. B1

Can I go to Tim's house?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**3** I can talk about road safety rules. B1

You must wear a safety helmet.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**6** I can ask people what housework they have to do. B1

Do you have to make your bed?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

## Reading, listening, and writing

		Got it?			
		Yes	I'm not sure	No	
<b>7</b>	I can read and understand a text about a ghost town.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>8</b>	I can listen to a police officer talking about road safety.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>9</b>	I can read and understand a text about housework.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>10</b>	I can write about a city I know.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**1**  **Read and listen** Match the names of the people with the jobs.

- |            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Ashley   | a Computer games designer |
| 2 Ly       | b Circus acrobat          |
| 3 Gilberto | c Events organizer        |

Most young people want to be teachers, lawyers, or doctors, but some have more unusual ambitions. Read about three teenagers with big plans for the future.

I want to be an events organizer and prepare events like weddings, parties, exhibitions, and festivals. I think I have the right qualities for the job. I'm ambitious, organized, and friendly. I'm going to get some important experiences for my job this summer. My best friend Cam is sixteen in July and I'm going to organize a birthday party for her. I hope to invite over 100 people! It's going to be a lot of work, but it's going to be fun!

**LY (16), VIETNAM**

I'd like to be an acrobat in a circus. It's the perfect job for me because I'm outgoing, confident, and hard-working. At the moment, I'm preparing for my career with the circus. I'm doing gymnastics lessons and ballet lessons and I'm going to start martial arts classes soon. This summer I'm going to take part in a circus summer camp, and when I finish school I hope to study at the Circus Center in San Francisco.

**ASHLEY (15), U.S.**

I want to be a computer games designer. I'm very patient, but I'm creative, too. When I finish High School I'm going to study Games Programming. I'd like to go to the University of São Paulo because it has an excellent ICT department. I'm going to get a job this summer. I'd like to work as a games tester and test new computer games. I want to save some money for college.

**GILBERTO (16) BRAZIL**



## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 What is the perfect job for Ashley?
- 2 How is she preparing for her career now?
- 3 What does an events organizer do?
- 4 When is Cam having her birthday party?
- 5 Why does Gilberto want to go to the University of São Paulo?
- 6 What does a games tester do?

## Language focus

### 3 Write sentences about Ashley, Ly, and Gilberto.

*Ashley is going to start martial arts classes soon.*

Ashley	is going to	organize a big birthday party. take part in a circus summer camp.
Ly		start martial arts classes soon. do a degree in Games Programming.
Gilberto		get important job experience this summer. get a summer job.

### 4 Read the article again. Then complete the sentences.

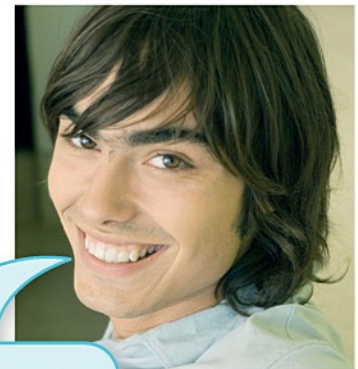
*I'd like to be* an acrobat in a circus.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ at the Circus Center in San Francisco.



2 I \_\_\_\_\_ an events organizer!

3 I \_\_\_\_\_ over 100 people.



4 I \_\_\_\_\_ to the University of São Paulo.

5 I \_\_\_\_\_ some money for college.

### 5 Focus on you Think about your plans for the future. Use the ideas in the box.

get a summer job   learn more languages   learn to drive  
make lots of money   study English at college   travel around the world

I'm going to / I'm not going to study English at college.

I'd like to learn to drive.

### 6 Pairwork Tell your partner about your plans for the future.



## Personality

### 1 Are the adjectives *Positive (P)* or *Negative (N)* or *Both (B)*? Use a dictionary.

- |                      |                     |                  |
|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 ambitious <u>P</u> | 6 hard-working ____ | 11 patient ____  |
| 2 bossy ____         | 7 kind ____         | 12 selfish ____  |
| 3 confident ____     | 8 lazy ____         | 13 serious ____  |
| 4 creative ____      | 9 organized ____    | 14 shy ____      |
| 5 friendly ____      | 10 outgoing ____    | 15 stubborn ____ |

### 2 Listen and repeat the adjectives in exercise 1.

### 3 Choose an adjective to describe these people.

- Melissa "Peter never studies" He's lazy.
- 1 Laura "I'm nervous when I meet new people." \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Daniel "I love parties and meeting new people." \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Larry "I never change my mind." \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Rebecca "I draw and paint and write stories." \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Steven "I think it's important to be good to people and to help them." \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Sandra "I like giving orders and telling people what to do." \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 **Pairwork** Describe and identify the people in the photos.

- A He's hard-working and serious.  
B Number 1?  
A Yes, that's right.



### 5 **Pairwork** Discuss your personality.

- A What's the best thing about your personality?  
B I'm outgoing.  
A What's the worst thing?  
B I'm lazy!

## be going to (1) Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	Negative
I am going to leave	I'm not going to leave
you are going to leave	you aren't going to leave
he / she / it is going to leave	he / she / it isn't going to leave
we / you / they are going to leave	we / you / they aren't going to leave

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

He's **going to** watch TV tonight.  
I'm **going to** write a book.

- We use **be going to** to talk about our intentions / present time activities.

Rules p.W14

### 1 Complete the sentences with **be going to** and the verbs in parentheses.



Pete's hungry. He **'s going to make** (make) a sandwich.

- Tania's really outgoing. She \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) everybody in our class to her party!
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) tennis with Peter again! He always wins!
- John and Peter want to learn karate. They \_\_\_\_\_ (take) lessons next month.
- We're not hungry. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) a big lunch.
- Jessica \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with her aunt and uncle next summer.
- I've seen this movie before. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not watch) it again.

## be going to Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative		
Am	I	going to leave?
Is	he / she / it	going to leave?
Are	you	going to leave?
Are	we / you / they	going to leave?
Short answers		
Affirmative		Negative
Yes, you are.		No, you aren't.
Yes, I am		No, I'm not.
Yes, he / she / it is.		No, he / she / it isn't.
Yes, we / you / they are.		No, we / you / they aren't.

Rules p.W14

### 2 Read the answers. Then complete the questions.

Where **are they going to have dinner?**

They're going to have dinner at my aunt's.

- How many days \_\_\_\_\_?  
We're going to stay in Mexico for a week.
- When \_\_\_\_\_?  
They're going to play tennis on Saturday.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
They're going to go to Miami for Christmas.
- How much \_\_\_\_\_?  
He's going to pay \$1,200 for a new computer.
- Which dress \_\_\_\_\_?  
She's going to buy the blue dress.
- What \_\_\_\_\_?  
I'm going to have a sandwich for lunch.

### 3 Game! Which cities are the people going to visit?

**Carlos is going to visit New York.**


- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 Carlos       | Los Angeles    |
| 2 Sue          | Paris          |
| 3 Edson        | Rome           |
| 4 Maki and Jun | New York       |
| 5 Mark         | Rio de Janeiro |

### Finished?

Write about your plans for the weekend. Write three things that you're going to do and three things you aren't going to do this weekend.

**This weekend I'm going to ...**

## Inviting people to do things

- 1  Complete the dialogues with the words in the box. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

busy can't cool **free** have dinner look love sure want

- 1  
 Mark Are you **free** on Friday?  
 Linda Yes, I am.  
 Mark Would you like to <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ together?  
 Linda I'd love to, but I <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. I'm  
<sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.  
 Mark How about going to the movies at 4 o'clock?  
 Linda <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. That's a great idea. I'd like to  
 see the new James Bond movie.  
 Mark Cool. I <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ action movies.
- 2  
 Jeff Would you like to play tennis?  
 Maria No, thanks! I hate playing tennis! And it's going to rain! <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ at the sky!  
 Jeff OK. Do you <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to watch a DVD at my house?  
 Maria <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_! Let's do that!



### You invite

Would you like to play tennis?

How about going to the movies?


### You reply

Yes, I'd love to.

No, thanks. I don't like / hate playing, doing, going ...

Sure. / Cool. That's a great idea.

I'd love to, but I can't / I'm busy.




- 2  **Pronunciation** Listen to the intonation of the sentences. Then listen and repeat.

1 Yes, I'd love to.

2 I'd love to, but I can't.

3 That's a great idea.

4 No, thanks.

- 3  Listen and put  for accepting and  for rejecting. Then listen and repeat.

1 

2 \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5 \_\_\_\_\_

6 \_\_\_\_\_

- 4  Listen to three conversations. Complete the chart.

Would you like to ...?	Yes (✓) / No (X)
1 _____	_____
2 _____	_____
3 _____	_____

- 5 **Pairwork** Write dialogues similar to those in exercise 1. Use the ideas in the box. Then practice your dialogues. 

go to the movies listen to music play basketball play computer games  
 surf the Internet watch a DVD watch TV

## be going to (2)

### Think!

- **Read the sentences and the rule.**  
Look at the clouds! It's **going to** rain.  
I didn't do my homework. My teacher **is going to** be angry.
- We use **be going to** to make a prediction based on present evidence.

Rules p.W15

### 1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **be going to** and the verbs in the box.

fall make not eat not sleep  
not win play wash win



She **'s going to win**.



1 He \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the dog.



2 We \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the game.



3 He \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the piano.



4 They \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ pizza.



5 It \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.



6 She \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ a cake.



7 He \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

## Verb + infinitive / -ing form

Verb + infinitive		Verb + -ing form	
I hope	to write.	I love	writing.
I want		I enjoy	
I'd like		I like	
		I don't mind	
	I prefer		
		I hate	

### Think!

- **Complete the sentences with *going* or *to go*.**
- I like <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies.
- I'd like <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies.

Rules p.W15

### 2 Complete the sentences with the infinitive or the -ing form of the verbs.

I like **playing** (play) volleyball.

I'd like **to go** (go) to the party this evening.

- 1 I want \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) this movie on TV.
- 2 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ (do) homework.
- 3 I hope \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a good job one day.
- 4 Our teacher is very patient and she doesn't mind \_\_\_\_\_ (repeat) instructions.
- 5 Pete doesn't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the dog out.
- 6 Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ (see) my new car?

### 3 Complete the text with the infinitive or -ing form of the verbs in the box.

find get **go** live  
save study travel work

My name's Aya and I'm in my final year at high school. I want **to go** to college next year. I love <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ languages and I want <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a degree in Spanish and German. This summer, I hope <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a job in a café. I want <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ some money for college and I don't mind <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hard. When I finish college, I'd love <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ around Europe. I'd like <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in Madrid or Berlin for six months.

### Finished?

### Write sentences about you.

I don't want to ... I'd really like to ... I hate ...  
I like ... I really hope to ... I want to ...

# What's your star sign?

"I don't believe in horoscopes. I'm Sagittarius and we're sceptical."

*Arthur C. Clarke*



**"What's your star sign?" is a very common question, and one that you probably often use, but do you really know what astrology and the zodiac is all about?**

The word astrology means the "study of stars" in Greek and it is a very ancient practice. Astrologers study the influence that stars and planets have on people's lives. They believe that the position of the sun, stars, moon, and planets at the time of your birth influences your personality and your future.

You probably know that there are twelve zodiac signs and that they depend on your date of birth. But did you know that astrologers divide the signs into four groups based on the elements fire, earth, air, and water? Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius are in the Fire group. Fire signs are very intense, exciting, and creative. Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorn are Earth

signs. People born under these signs are stable and methodical. Gemini, Libra, and Aquarius are in the Air group. Air signs are very friendly and intellectual. Finally, Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces are Water signs. They are very emotional and intuitive.

Astrologers organize the signs into a circle called the zodiac wheel. People are most compatible with the sign opposite them in the wheel. For example people born under the sign of Cancer are compatible with people born under the sign of Capricorn. Fire-Air and Water-Earth combinations are good. Water-Fire and Earth-Air are bad!

People have very different opinions about astrology. Some people believe strongly in the influence of the stars, but other people think it's all nonsense.

## Reading

### 1 Read the text quickly. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What zodiac sign are you?
- 2 What are two characteristics of your sign?

### 2 Read the text again. Answer the questions.

- 1 What does astrology mean?
- 2 How do astrologers divide the zodiac signs?
- 3 What are the Fire signs?
- 4 What are the characteristics of the Water signs?
- 5 Which sign are Leos most compatible with?
- 6 Do you believe in star signs and horoscopes? Why / Why not?

## Listening

### 3 Listen and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Emily's birthday is on ... .  
a April 12<sup>th</sup>                      b March 21<sup>st</sup>                      c April 20<sup>th</sup>
- 2 Emily says she isn't ... .  
a energetic                      b patient                      c stubborn
- 3 She wants to be a ... .  
a lawyer                      b police officer                      c accountant
- 4 Star Jones is ... .  
a an actor                      b a painter                      c a TV host
- 5 Justin Timberlake's star sign is ... .  
a Sagittarius                      b Aquarius                      c Leo

## Speaking

### 4 **Pairwork** Ask and answer the questions about your future plans.

- Are you going to go to college?
- Are you going to travel?
- What type of job would you like to do?
- Would you like to live a foreign country?

## Writing

### 5 Read Jack's e-mail. Then write an e-mail to a friend. Replace the phrases in bold with information about your future plans.

Hi,  
Thanks for your e-mail. You asked me about my future and I have a lot of big ideas!  
I'm going to **stay at school until I'm eighteen** and then I'd like to **travel around the world for a year**.  
After that I hope to go **to college**. I want to **study Media Studies** because I'd like to **work in television**. I want to be a **TV host** – **they get a lot of money and I'd like to be rich!** What about you? What are you going to do?  
Write back soon,  
Jack.

1  **Read and listen** Check (✓) the things that the article talks about.

a the weather

b school subjects

c food

# WALKING THE AMAZON



Ed Stafford, from England, is an explorer. At the moment he is in South America. Why? Because he wants to be the first person to walk along the Amazon River! He hopes that the expedition will help people learn more about the Amazon, the rainforest, and the people who live there. A lot of schools are following his progress.

Here are some questions that students asked at the start of Ed's trip:

### **How far will Ed walk?**

Ed will walk across South America, from Camaná in Peru to the Atlantic coast of Brazil. That's about 6,500 kilometers!

### **What dangers will there be?**

The Amazon can be very dangerous. Ed will meet a lot of wild animals.

### **What dangerous animals will he see?**

He'll see a lot of snakes and he'll see piranha fish and caiman in the river. There are also jaguars in the rainforest, but Ed probably won't see one because they're very rare.

### **How will he find food?**

Ed will have a supply of food. If he finishes the food, he'll have to find food in the rainforest. He'll eat plants and if he's lucky, he'll catch a lot of fish. If he doesn't find food on his journey, he'll get hungry and weak.

### **What will the weather be like?**

The rainforest is in a tropical area, so it'll be very warm and it'll rain a lot. The temperature is usually about 26°C, but it'll be quite cold at night.



## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Ed Stafford from?
- 2 What is his job?
- 3 Why is he in South America?
- 4 How far is the journey from Camaná in Peru to the Atlantic coast of Brazil?
- 5 What kinds of dangerous animals live in the Amazon rainforest?
- 6 What is the average temperature in the rainforest?

## Language focus

### 3 Read the article again. Then complete the predictions about Ed's journey.

**WHAT WILL ED'S AMAZING JOURNEY BE LIKE?**

**FOOD**

- 1 Food will be a big problem.
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_ plants and fish.

**WEATHER**

- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
- 6 It \_\_\_\_\_ quite cold at night.

**ANIMALS**

- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ piranha fish and caiman in the river.
- 4 He probably \_\_\_\_\_ a jaguar because they're very rare.

### 4 Complete the sentences with phrases from the article.

- 1 If he finishes the food, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_, he'll catch a lot of fish.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_, he'll get hungry and weak.

### 5 Focus on you Read the predictions below. What do you think? Circle the words that match your opinions.


- 1 It will be hot / cold tomorrow.
- 2 The climate won't get warmer / colder in the future.
- 3 Brazil / Italy will win the next Soccer World Cup.
- 4 Children won't study at home / at school in the future.
- 5 English / Chinese will be the most important world language in the future.

### 6 Pairwork Discuss your choices in exercise 5 with a partner.

- A I think it will be hot tomorrow.  
B I agree. / Really? I think it will be cold.



## The weather

- 1  Match the pictures with the words in the boxes and write sentences. Then listen and repeat.

cloudy foggy raining  
snowing sunny windy

cold freezing hot  
mild warm



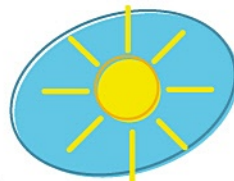
1 It's cloudy.



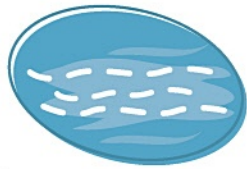
2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



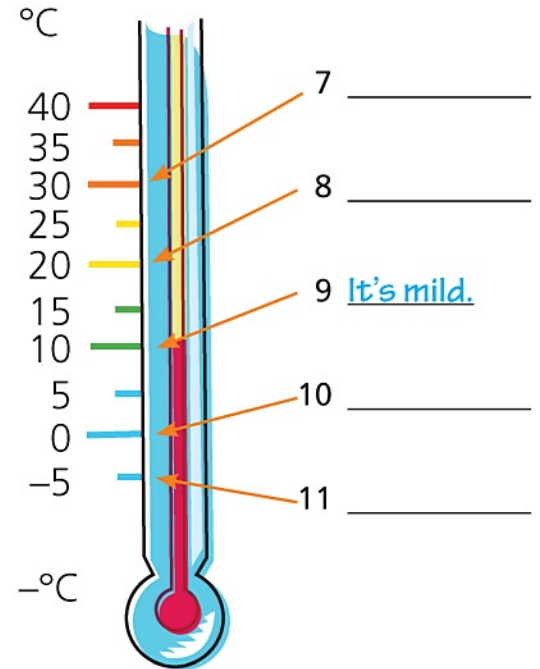
4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_



- 2  Listen to the weather report. What is the weather like in these cities?

- 1 London \_\_\_\_\_  
2 New York \_\_\_\_\_  
3 Sydney \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 **Pairwork** Look at the chart. Ask and answer questions about the weather. 

- A What's the weather like in Rio?  
B It's a hot day. The temperature is 32°C and it's cloudy.

WORLD WEATHER		
RIO DE JANEIRO	32°C	
SAN FRANCISCO	10°C	
PARIS	7°C	
HONG KONG	15°C	
MOSCOW	5°C	
MELBOURNE	30°C	

## will: future

### Affirmative and negative

Affirmative		
	Full form	Short form
I / you / he / she / it / we / you / they	will win	'll win
Negative		
I / you / he / she / it / we / you / they	will not win	won't win

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

I think it'll **rain** this evening.

It **won't** rain next week.

- We use **will** or **won't** to talk about future intentions / make future predictions.

Rules p.W20

### 1 Complete the sentences with **will** or **won't**.

Tim's a great tennis player. I think he **will** win.

- Kelly's a terrible driver. She \_\_\_\_\_ pass her test.
- Scientists believe the climate \_\_\_\_\_ get warmer in the future.
- Al \_\_\_\_\_ buy a computer. He hates them!
- I think Liam \_\_\_\_\_ go to the concert tonight. He loves music.
- Emma \_\_\_\_\_ be at the party this evening. She has an exam tomorrow.

### 2 Make predictions with **will** (✓) and **won't** (X).

It / be / an exciting vacation. (✓)

**It'll be an exciting vacation.**

- We / see / a lot of interesting places. (X)
- We / have / time to see everything. (X)
- We / eat / Mexican food. (✓)
- I / speak / English. (X)
- I / understand / everything. (✓)

### Finished?

Make five predictions about your future. Use **will** / **won't** and the verbs in the box.

be happy   be rich   have a big house  
have a lot of children   live in a different country

When I'm older I think I'll ...

## will: future

### Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative		
Will	I / you / he / she / it	win?
	we / you / they	
Yes,	I / you / he / she / it	will.
	we / you / they	
No,	I / you / he / she / it	won't.
	we / you / they	

Rules p.W20

### 3 Write questions with **will**. Then answer the questions with your opinions.

It / rain / tonight?

**Will it rain tonight? Yes, it will. / No, it won't.**

- you / go / to college?
- people / live / on the moon in the future?
- England / win / the next Soccer World Cup?
- it / snow / in your country this winter?
- you / be / famous in 2025?

## will / be going to

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

I think it'll **rain** tomorrow.

Look at those black clouds! It's **going to** rain!

- We use <sup>1</sup>**will / be going to** to make predictions based on an opinion.
- We use <sup>2</sup>**will / be going to** to make a prediction based on evidence.

Rules p.W20

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **will** or **be going to**.

Careful! You **'re going to** drop those books!  
I hope it **'ll** be sunny tomorrow.

- I think Tom \_\_\_\_\_ like this movie.
- The score is 5-0! My team \_\_\_\_\_ win!
- There's a great smell in the kitchen! We \_\_\_\_\_ have a nice dinner!
- Kathy wasn't at school today, but she \_\_\_\_\_ probably be back tomorrow.
- The traffic is terrible! We \_\_\_\_\_ be late!
- I don't think it \_\_\_\_\_ snow much this winter.

## Making offers

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answers. Then listen and repeat.

1

- A Oh no! It's going to rain and I don't have an umbrella!
- B Don't worry, I'll drive you home / I'll give you my umbrella.
- A That's kind of you, but it isn't far. I can walk.
- B OK, I'll get my keys / I'll get you my umbrella.
- A OK. Thanks.



2

- A It's hot in here.
- B Yes, it is. I'll open the window / I'll switch on the air conditioning.
- A Great. Thanks.



3

- A I'm really hungry!
- B There's some cheese in the refrigerator, I'll make you a sandwich / I'll cut you a piece.
- A Oh yes, please. Thanks.



#### You offer

#### You reply

I'll (drive you home)

That's kind of you, but ...

I'll (open the window)

Great. Thanks.

I'll (make you a sandwich)

Oh yes, please. Thanks. / No, thanks.

### 2 Pronunciation Listen to the pronunciation of 'I'll'. Then listen again and repeat.

I'll make some coffee. I'll help you. I'll cook dinner.

### 3 Listen and choose the correct answers.

- 1 I / I'll make a sandwich for lunch.
- 2 I / I'll cook dinner.
- 3 I / I'll drive.
- 4 I / I'll do the grocery shopping.

### 4 **Pairwork** Write dialogues similar to those in exercise 1. Use the ideas in the chart. Then practice your dialogues.

Problem	Offer ...
can't do homework	to help
thirsty	to make a cup of tea
hot	to open a window
bags are heavy	to carry the bags
no milk	to buy some milk
dinner is ready	to lay the table

- A Oh! I can't do my math homework!
- B I'll help you if you want.
- A Oh, yes, please. Thanks!

## First conditional

If clause	Main clause
If it's hot,	we'll have a picnic.
If it rains,	we won't have a picnic.
If it doesn't rain,	we'll go to the beach.
Main clause	If clause
We'll have a picnic	if it's hot.
We won't have a picnic	if it rains.
Will we go to the beach	if it doesn't rain?

### Think!

- Choose the correct alternative.
  - We use the <sup>1</sup>simple present / *will* + infinitive in the *If* clause.
  - We use the <sup>2</sup>simple present / *will* + infinitive in the main clause.

Rules p.W21

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

If it snows (snow) this week, I'll go skiing.  
I won't go out (not / go out) on Saturday if I have a lot of homework.

- If it rains tomorrow, we \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) on the school trip.
- If we \_\_\_\_\_ (not leave) now, we'll miss the bus!
- If Amy gets home late, \_\_\_\_\_ (her mom / be) angry?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a CD if I go shopping.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not / get up) now, you'll be late for school.
- If Simon \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) his exams, he'll be really surprised!

### 2 Write the sentences.

If / I get money for my birthday / I / buy a camera.

**If I get money for my birthday, I'll buy a camera.**

- We / not watch / the movie / if / it / finish late
- If / they / go / to the U.S. / they / speak / English
- I / invite / Jake to the party / if / I / see him
- If / I / have time / I write / to Grandma tonight
- If you not study / your teacher / be angry
- I / call Maria / if / she / not be / at school today

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.



If it 's (be) sunny, we 'll go (go) to the beach.

- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) my project, Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (take) me to the baseball game.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) that coffee now, you \_\_\_\_\_ (not sleep) tonight!
- If Mark \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis after school today, he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home late.
- If it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) a lot tonight, we \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to school tomorrow.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) all that ice cream, you \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) sick later!

### 4 Game! Make first conditional sentences with the verbs in the box. You get one point for each complete correct sentence.

get up go have see snow study win

- Say the first clause of a conditional sentence.
- Complete the sentence and start a new sentence.

- If I win \$1,000, ...
- If I win \$1,000, I'll be very happy! (1 point!)  
If it snows tomorrow, ...

### Finished?

Write first conditional sentences which are true for you. Use the ideas in the box.

you don't have any homework this evening  
you get a good school report card  
you go to the movies on Saturday  
you're bored this afternoon

**If I don't have any homework this evening, I'll watch TV.**

# THE ENVIRONMENT

— what's in the news?

Scientists believe that the climate is changing and that it will probably be a lot hotter in the future. If that happens, then the world will change in a negative way. Plants won't grow because there won't be much rainwater. A lot of animals will become extinct because they won't have any food and some hot countries will become deserts. But why is the climate changing and what can we do about it? Read on and find out!

## Global warming

The Earth produces gases that protect our world. They are called “greenhouse gases” and they surround the planet. Greenhouse gases are good because they help keep the Earth warm. But if we produce too many of these gases they will have a bad effect on the environment because greenhouse gases make the climate hotter.

## Am I making things worse?

CO<sub>2</sub> (carbon dioxide) is the main greenhouse gas. We all produce CO<sub>2</sub>. You too! Do you use electricity? Does your family have a car? Yes? Then you contribute directly to global warming and you have a “carbon footprint”!

## A carbon footprint? What's that?

Your “carbon footprint” is a measure of how much CO<sub>2</sub> you produce in your everyday life. A big carbon footprint means that you produce a lot of CO<sub>2</sub> and that isn't good for the environment. But don't panic – you can reduce it! For example, cycle or walk to school instead of going by car. It won't be the end of the world if we have to change our lifestyles a little, but it probably will be if we don't!



**1 Before you read** Discuss the questions with the class.

- 1 What is global warming?
- 2 What is a carbon footprint?

**2 Read the text quickly.** Then check your answers to exercise 1.

## Reading

### 3 Read the text again. Answer the questions.

- 1 What do scientists think will happen to the climate in the future?
- 2 What will happen to some hot countries?
- 3 Why will a lot of animals become extinct?
- 4 What do greenhouse gases do?
- 5 What happens when there are too many greenhouse gases?
- 6 What does a carbon footprint measure?
- 7 Do you think your carbon footprint is big or small?

## Listening

### 4 Listen to Emma and Joe talking about the environment. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 Emma is doing a project for geography / science.
- 2 She answers questions / asks Joe the questions in a questionnaire.
- 3 Joe is / isn't interested in the environment.

### 5 Listen again and complete the questionnaire. How big is Joe's carbon footprint?

## Calculate your carbon footprint!

- 1 How do you get to school?  
a by bus / by car                      b by bike / on foot
- 2 How often do you travel by plane?  
a once a year or more    b less than once a year
- 3 Do you have a cell phone?  
a yes    b no
- 4 Do you recycle paper, glass, and aluminum?  
a yes    b no
- 5 Do you use plastic bags for all your shopping?  
a yes    b no

Score 1 point for every a.  
Total score: — / 5

4-5 That's really bad! Your carbon footprint is big! What can you do to reduce it?

2-3 Your carbon footprint is normal, but we're sure you can reduce it!

0-1 Well done! Your carbon footprint is very small!

## Speaking

### 6 **Pairwork** Ask and answer the questions in the questionnaire. Then calculate your partner's carbon footprint.

### 7 Discuss with your teacher and the class.

- How can you reduce your carbon footprint?
- Your school has a carbon footprint, too! How can you help to reduce it?

## Writing

### 8 Write a short text about your carbon footprint. Use the questions to help you.

- How big is your carbon footprint?
- What can you do to reduce the size?
- What aspects of your everyday life can't you change?
- What things can you change?
- What will happen if we all make more changes?
- How "green" are you?

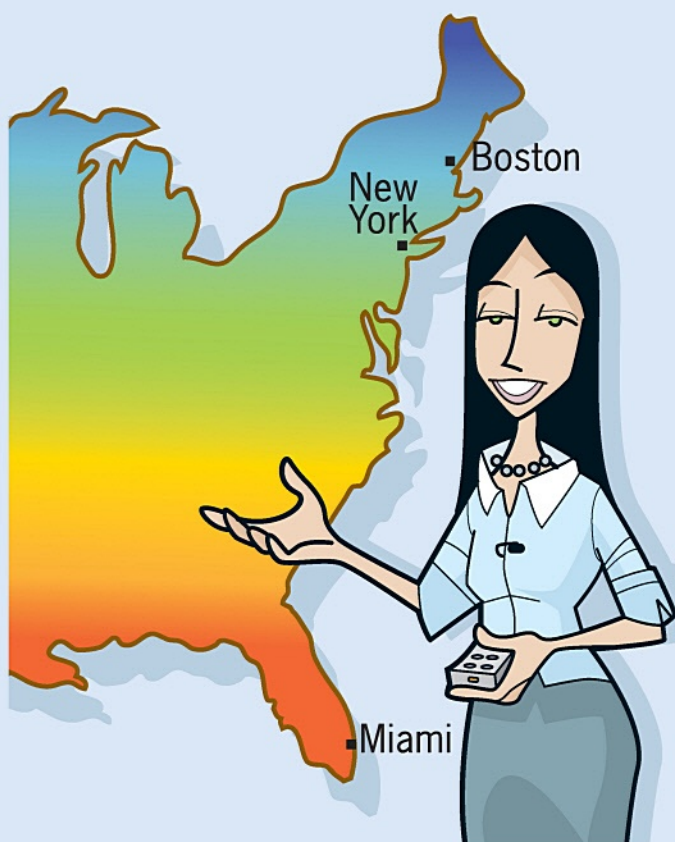
## Vocabulary

## 1 Complete the sentences with personality adjectives.

Our new science teacher is very friendly.

- 1 My brother never helps at home. He is very l\_\_\_\_\_y.
- 2 Martha always tells me what to do. She is b\_\_\_\_\_y.
- 3 Charlie is a k\_\_\_\_\_d person. He often helps other people.
- 4 Carmen doesn't laugh very much. She is quite s\_\_\_\_\_s.
- 5 Harry and Alex don't think about other people. They are s\_\_\_\_\_h.
- 6 Jake wants to be rich and famous. He is a\_\_\_\_\_s.

## 2 Complete the weather report with the correct weather words.



"So, let's take a look at the weather in some of our major cities. In Boston it's very cold and it's <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Temperatures are higher in New York, but it's <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. In Seattle it's very <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. In San Francisco it's <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Miami is the place to be – it's <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_."

## Grammar

3 Complete sentences 1–6 with *be going to*. Then match them with sentences A–F.

- 1 Paul isn't going to buy (not buy) the *Avatar* DVD. **F**
- 2 Jessica \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her aunt and uncle next weekend. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the horror movie on TV tonight? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We \_\_\_\_\_ (start) karate lessons next month. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) tennis with Peter again! \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ Kelly \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her friends on the weekend? \_\_\_\_\_

- A No, she isn't. She has a test on Monday.  
 B We want to learn a new sport.  
 C Yes, I am. It starts at 8 p.m.  
 D He always wins.  
 E They live in New York.  
 F He doesn't like cartoons.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be going to* and the words in the box.

be sick   ~~break the glass~~   have an accident  
 lose the game   miss the bus  
 not pass the exam   not rain

Be careful. You 're going to break the glass!

- 1 Hurry up! We \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 They're playing badly. They \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I ate too many cookies. I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The sky is blue. It \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 You're driving too fast. We \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 John doesn't know the answers to the questions. He \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5 Choose the correct answers.

I hope to go / going to college.

- 1 She wants to get / getting a job in a bank.
- 2 Jim doesn't mind washing / to wash the dishes.
- 3 I'd like / I like staying in bed late on the weekends.
- 4 Ray likes cycling / cycle, but he prefers running / run.
- 5 I'd like to learn / learning Japanese.
- 6 I hate do / doing grammar exercises!

**6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *will* and the verbs in the box.**

be do eat enjoy pass see win

Rob is a great soccer player. I think he 'll be a champion one day.

- Mia is coming to the party. We \_\_\_\_\_ her there.
- Rachel isn't studying hard. She \_\_\_\_\_ her test.
- It's a fantastic movie. You \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- You have lots of homework for tomorrow. When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- She doesn't like vegetables. She \_\_\_\_\_ carrots.
- The Lakers are playing very well, but \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ the NBA Championship?

**7 Complete the sentences with *be going to* or *will*.**

You 're going to lose your keys.

- I think Brazil \_\_\_\_\_ win the next World Cup.
- Watch out! You \_\_\_\_\_ break the lamp.
- In the future, houses \_\_\_\_\_ be very different.
- Look! He \_\_\_\_\_ take your bike!
- I think purple \_\_\_\_\_ be in fashion next season.



**8 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.**

If it rains (rain) we'll stay (stay) at home.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (help) you if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not understand).
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) the dishes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the living room.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (study) if you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to college?
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (celebrate) if you \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) your exams!
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) some money for my birthday, I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new sweater.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not clean) your room, your mom \_\_\_\_\_ (get) mad.

**Got it?**

**9 Choose the correct answers.**



Next Saturday, we're going to have / having a charity day at our school. We're <sup>1</sup>going to / going organize lots of fun events to make money. The 9<sup>th</sup> grade students <sup>2</sup>going / are going to make cookies and sell them in the school. Some boys are going to <sup>3</sup>play / playing a long basketball game. They hope to <sup>4</sup>play / playing for twelve hours. We're going to have a barbeque, too. The weather forecast says it will <sup>5</sup>to be / be cloudy, but it <sup>6</sup>won't / want rain. Some 8<sup>th</sup> grade students are going to have a karaoke competition. Some of the teachers want <sup>7</sup>sing / to sing, too! I'd like <sup>8</sup>to take / taking part, but I'm very shy and I don't like <sup>9</sup>sing / singing in public. The 7<sup>th</sup> grade students <sup>10</sup>aren't going / not going to talk for 24 hours. If they <sup>11</sup>will succeed / succeed the teachers <sup>12</sup>are / will be very happy! Last year we made \$850 for charity. This year we hope to <sup>13</sup>make / making over \$1,000.

**10 Answer the questions.**

- When is the school going to have a charity day?
- What are the 9<sup>th</sup> grade students going to do?
- What will the weather be like?
- What do some of the teachers want to do?
- When will the teachers be happy?
- How much money do they hope to make?



## WHAT IS WRONG WITH THE WEATHER?

You don't often see people in T-shirts and shorts in the snow – especially not in the summer! But in July 2009 eight centimeters of hail fell on parts of New Jersey. Experts say that it was an extremely unusual incident.

This is only one example of some very unusual weather in the U.S. in the recent years. Last winter there wasn't any snow in the northern ski resorts of New England, but people in the southern states of Arizona and New Mexico saw snow for the first time! In Chicago, Illinois where there is usually a lot of snow in the winter, organizers postponed the annual snow sculpting competition because there wasn't any snow at all.

The Pacific Northwest recorded one of the wettest winters in history. In Seattle, Washington, it rained for 26 days! In California cold weather destroyed crops of lemons and oranges. Economists predict that fruit and vegetable prices will be higher next year as a result.



So, what is causing the extreme weather? Some experts say that it's the result of global warming. "We are changing the earth's atmosphere, so we're also changing the climate," says climatologist Tim Rice. "If global warming continues, these unusual weather incidents will become more and more extreme!" Other climatologists don't agree. They say that unusual weather is normal and caused by natural phenomena. "The weather will always be unpredictable," says meteorologist Jan Akken. "That's why it's fun!"

### 1 Read the magazine article quickly. Where are the places in the photos?

a \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What unusual weather event happened in New Jersey?
- 2 Why was the weather unusual in New England last summer?
- 3 Does it often snow in Arizona and New Mexico?
- 4 Why did organizers postpone the annual snow sculpting contest in Chicago?
- 5 How many days did it rain continuously in Seattle?
- 6 Why will fruit and vegetable prices be higher next year?
- 7 What will happen if global warming continues in Tim Rice's opinion?
- 8 Why is weather fun in Jan Akken's opinion?

### 3 Focus on you Write about an extreme weather event (real or imaginary) in your country.

- Describe what happened (when, where ...)
- Did the event cause damage (houses, people, vegetation ...)?
- What caused the event?

## Speaking and writing

**1** I can talk and write about my future plans. B1

I'm going to study English at college.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**2** I can identify and describe people's personality. B1

He is confident.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**3** I can invite people to do things and respond to other people's invitations. B1

Are you free on Friday?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**4** I can describe weather conditions. B1

It's foggy.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**5** I can make and respond to offers. B1

I'll give you my umbrella.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**6** I can talk about my carbon footprint and how I can reduce it. B1

I walk to school.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

## Reading, listening, and writing

		Got it?		
		Yes	I'm not sure	No
<b>7</b>	I can read and understand a text about someone's future plans. <span style="float: right;">B1</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>8</b>	I can write an e-mail to a pen friend. <span style="float: right;">B1</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>9</b>	I can read and understand a text about an explorer. <span style="float: right;">B1</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>10</b>	I can read and understand a text about the environment. <span style="float: right;">B1</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

# Remember

## Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the correct adjectives.

The sun is shining, but it's a **cold** day.

- Maria wants to get a good job. She's very a\_\_\_\_\_.
- It's quite c\_\_\_\_\_. I think it's going to rain.
- I don't like meeting new people. I'm s\_\_\_\_\_.
- My mom works with old people. She's very k\_\_\_\_\_.
- I can't see the road! It's really f\_\_\_\_\_ this morning!
- Mario's l\_\_\_\_\_! He never studies!

2 Add two new words or phrases for each category.

Places in town	Housework	Personality	Weather
1 <u>hospital</u>	4 <u>do the dusting</u>	7 <u>stubborn</u>	10 <u>windy</u>
2 _____	5 _____	8 _____	11 _____
3 _____	6 _____	9 _____	12 _____

## Grammar

### must / mustn't

3 Look at the information. Then write five more rules with *must* / *mustn't*.

1 You must sit in the correct seat.

### Brightwell Movie Theater

- sit in the correct seat
- don't talk during the movie!
- don't smoke in the theater
- turn off cell phones
- don't put your feet on the seats!
- take your trash home after the movie

## some / any / no / every compounds

4 Complete the compound words with *some*, *any*, *no*, or *every*.

I didn't tell anyone your secret.

- I didn't go \_\_\_\_\_ where last weekend.
- I have \_\_\_\_\_ thing to do. Let's watch a DVD.
- The city center is very quiet in August. \_\_\_\_\_ one is on vacation.
- Kelly's uncle lives \_\_\_\_\_ where near here.
- A "Who was that?"  
B "It was \_\_\_\_\_ one from my tennis club."
- We never do \_\_\_\_\_ thing exciting! We always stay at home.

## have to / don't have to

5 Write five more sentences about Natalie's obligations. Use the correct form of *have to*.

At home:	At school:
load the dishwasher ✓	wear a uniform ✗
take out the trash ✗	stay at school for lunch ✗
clean her room ✓	go to school on Saturday ✓

1 She has to load the dishwasher.

6 And you? Write about your obligations. Use the activities in exercise 5.

## mustn't / don't have to

7 Choose the correct answers.

You mustn't / don't have to run in the school corridors!

- Mom says we mustn't / don't have to be late.
- You mustn't / don't have to buy a ticket. The museum is free!
- I mustn't / don't have to cook. My mom always cooks.
- You mustn't / don't have to listen to music when you ride a bike.
- Sandro's lucky! He mustn't / doesn't have to do homework on weekends!
- Paula mustn't / doesn't have to wear jeans to school.

## verb + -ing form / infinitive

8 Complete the sentences with the *-ing* or the infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

buy do listen play study visit ~~watch~~

Kenny wants to watch the movie on HBO.

- I hope \_\_\_\_\_ languages at college.
- Tomas hates \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.
- Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ to music?
- I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ Europe when I leave school.
- Dad wants \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
- \_\_\_\_\_ housework is boring.

## be going to

9 Complete the text with the correct form of *be going to* and the verbs in parentheses.

When I leave school. I'm not going to get (not / get) a job immediately. I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a long vacation first. My friend and I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with my uncle in Philadelphia. We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) around the area and we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) New York. It <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fantastic! What <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / do) when you leave school?

10 Complete the sentences with *be going to* and the verbs in the box.

be buy clean eat visit watch



It 's going to be a nice day tomorrow.



1 He \_\_\_\_\_ some bananas.



2 They \_\_\_\_\_ a DVD.



3 It \_\_\_\_\_ the fish.



4 She \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom.



5 I \_\_\_\_\_ a capital city.

## will

11 Complete the conversation with the correct form of *will* and the verbs in parentheses.

Rick What will you do (you / do) when you leave college?

Sasha I think I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to Hollywood! It's my dream.

Rick Really?

Sasha Yes, I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (work) at a movie studio, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (marry) a famous actor, and we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a big house in Beverly Hills.

Rick Yeah, well I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / come) to visit you.

Sasha Why not?

Rick Because you <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / be) there, Sasha! It's all in your dreams!

## will / be going to

12 Choose the correct answers.

Are you going to watch / Will you watch the movie on TV this evening?

- I think I 'm going to be / 'll be famous in the future.
- It's 8:30! You 're going to be / will be late!
- In the future everyone is going to learn / will learn to fly.
- I'm sure that there isn't going to be / won't be a free space in the parking lot.
- What are you going to do / will you do when you finish college?

## First conditional

13 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

If it 's (be) snowing tomorrow, we 'll go (go) to the mountains.

- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) any homework, I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) my new computer game.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) that movie, you \_\_\_\_\_ (not sleep)!
- If Mark \_\_\_\_\_ (play) volleyball tonight, he \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) dinner late.
- If it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) a lot this morning, we \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to the park for a picnic.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) earlier, you \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at school on time!

1  **Read and listen** Answer the question. Why did Adam call Mike?

- a to talk about exciting activities
- b to find out about a new sport
- c to discuss a trip to New Zealand

[Home Page](#)

[Friends Pages](#)

[Communities Page](#)

[My Photos](#)

[Connections](#)

[Logout](#)

## This week's top blogs

I've done that! Zorbing in Tacoma

08/18/10 10:08 a.m. Adam Baker

I've done some cool things in my life: I've been on TV, I've won a competition ... and yesterday I tried zorbing! Have you ever heard of zorbing? No? Well, to be honest, I didn't know what it was before last Friday. I called Mike at the Zorbing Center in Tacoma, Washington ...

**Adam** What is zorbing, Mike? I've never heard of it.

**Mike** It's an exciting new sport. You get into a big plastic ball and roll down a hill.

**Adam** What?! But that's crazy! And dangerous! Have you ever had an accident in a zorb?

**Mike** No, I haven't. It isn't dangerous at all. It's great fun!

**Adam** Did you invent it?

**Mike** No, I didn't. The idea comes from New Zealand.

**Adam** Have you ever been to New Zealand?

**Mike** Yes, I have. Zorbing is very popular with young people there.

**Adam** Really? Do people need special clothes for zorbing?

**Mike** No, you can wear a pair of shorts and a T-shirt. Or a swimming costume if you want to try hydro-zorbing.

**Adam** What's hydro-zorbing?

**Mike** It's the same as zorbing, but we put some water into the zorb. It's a bit like a washing machine!

**Adam** What?! You guys are crazy!

Well, I've tried zorbing and it really is fantastic! I want to do other exciting things now, too. I've never done a bungee jump, for example, and I haven't ridden a horse. What about you? Have you ever done anything really exciting? Write and tell me about it!

Reply

[view all](#)

[manage](#)

[delete](#)

Invite friends

[more](#)



## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 What is zorbing?
- 2 What do people do when they go zorbing?
- 3 Where does the idea come from?
- 4 What do people usually wear for zorbing?
- 5 How is a hydro-zorb different to a normal zorb?
- 6 Which other sports would Adam like to do?

## Language focus

### 3 Complete what Adam says about his experiences.

"I **'ve tried** zorbing!"

- 1 "I \_\_\_\_\_ on TV."
- 2 "I \_\_\_\_\_ a competition."
- 3 "I \_\_\_\_\_ a bungee jump."
- 4 "I \_\_\_\_\_ a horse."

### 4 Listen to Adam and his friend Jessica. Complete their conversation with the words and phrases in the box.

have Have you ever done **Have you ever tried**  
haven't 've never done 've won

Jessica What did you do yesterday, Adam?

Adam I tried zorbing. It was awesome! **Have you ever tried** it?

Jessica No, I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I think it's crazy!

Adam No, it isn't. It's great fun and it's really exciting!  
<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ anything exciting?

Jessica Yes, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I  
<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a karaoke competition.

Adam Wow! Karaoke. I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that!



### 5 Focus on you Check (✓) the things you have done in your life.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| <b>I've won a competition.</b>           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <b>I've ridden a horse.</b>              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <b>I've done karaoke.</b>                | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <b>I've eaten Korean food.</b>           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <b>I've been to a different country.</b> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

### 6 Pairwork Tell your partner about the things you have done in your life.

- A I've won a competition, I've done karaoke, and I've tried Korean food.  
B I've ridden a horse and I've been to a different country.

## Exciting experiences

1  Match the pictures with the experiences. Then listen and repeat.

~~do a parachute jump~~ fly in an airplane go camping  
go scuba diving meet a famous person ride a roller coaster stay in a hotel  
travel abroad watch a soccer game

1 do a parachute jump



2  Listen and say what the people are doing.

- 1 They 're riding a roller coaster.
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 They \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 They \_\_\_\_\_.

3 **Pairwork** Discuss the questions. 

- 1 Which of the activities in exercise 1 are ...
  - the most / least exciting?
  - the most / least dangerous?
  - the most / least expensive?
- 2 Which activities would you like to do? Which would you hate to do?

## Present perfect Affirmative and negative

Subject	have/has (not)	Past participle
I / you / we / they	have ('ve) / haven't	visited
he / she / it	has ('s) / hasn't	visited

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

He's **visited** Peru.

They've **won** a competition.

- Do we know when he visited Peru? <sup>1</sup>Yes / No
- Do we know when they won a competition? <sup>2</sup>Yes / No

Rules p.W26

## Past participles

Regular verbs		
Base form	Simple past	Past participle
visit	visited	visited
live	lived	lived

Irregular verbs		
Base form	Simple past	Past participle
win	won	won
sing	sang	sung

See the inside back cover for a list of irregular verbs.

Rules p.W26

- 1 Complete the sentences with the affirmative (✓) or negative (X) present perfect form of the verbs in the box.

buy do eat fly meet **ride** see **travel**

I **'ve ridden** a motorcycle. (✓)

Tom **hasn't traveled** around the world. (X)

- Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ a new skirt for the party. (✓)
- You \_\_\_\_\_ this movie five times! (✓)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food before. (X)
- Tom \_\_\_\_\_ Johnny Depp! (✓)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ in an airplane. (X)
- Matt \_\_\_\_\_ a bungee jump. (X)

- 2 Write sentences in the present perfect.

Nick and Mark / be / to Egypt

**Nick and Mark have been to Egypt.**

Tim / not travel / abroad

**Tim hasn't traveled abroad.**

- Nick and Mark / ride / a camel
- Tim / not see / a camel
- Tim / win / a karaoke competition
- Nick and Mark / not do / karaoke
- Nick and Tim / watch / a soccer game
- Mark / not be / to a soccer game

## been / gone

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then answer the questions.

1 Matt **has been** to Egypt. He really enjoyed it.

2 Alex **has gone** to Egypt on vacation.

In sentence 1: Is Matt in Egypt now?

In sentence 2: Is Alex in Egypt now?

Rules p.W27

- 3 Complete the sentences with **been** or **gone**.

"Where's Sam?"

"He's **gone** to the teen center."

- I've \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris three times.
- Dad has \_\_\_\_\_ to New York. I hope he buys me a present!
- We've \_\_\_\_\_ to six countries in Europe.
- Kate isn't here. She's \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- "Where are the boys?" "They have \_\_\_\_\_ to baseball practice."

- 4 **Game!** In groups talk about the experiences on page 54. Can you remember what everyone has or hasn't done? Write sentences. Who can remember the most in two minutes?

**Marcia hasn't been on TV, but she and Luis have met a famous person.**

### Finished?

Write about your experiences. Use the ideas on page 54.

**I haven't been scuba diving.**





## Booking an activity

- 1 Read and listen to the dialogue. Complete the booking form. Then listen and repeat.

Receptionist Hello, Brooklyn Bowl. Can I help you?

Rick Yes, please. I'd like to book a bowling lane.

Receptionist Have you been here before?

Rick Yes, I have.

Receptionist OK, what's your name, please?

Rick It's Rick Nelson.

Receptionist OK, Rick. And when do you want to book the lane for?

Rick Saturday at 3 o'clock, please.

Receptionist OK, Saturday at 3 o'clock. How many people are there?

Rick Three.

Receptionist So, that'll be \$30 for the lane and \$4 each for shoe rental. Is that OK?

Rick Yeah, that's fine.

Receptionist OK. I've booked that for you.

Rick That's great. Thanks. Bye.

Receptionist Bye.

### Brooklyn Bowl NYC

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Day and time: \_\_\_\_\_

No. of people: \_\_\_\_\_

Total price: \_\_\_\_\_

#### You hear

Can I help you?

Have you been here before?

When do you want to book (the lane) for?

How many people are there?

#### You answer

Yes, please. I'd like to book a ...

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

On (Saturday) at (3 o'clock)

(Three)

- 2 **Pronunciation** /həv/ and /hæv/. Listen to the pronunciation of *have* in the dialogues. Then listen and repeat.

1 A **Have** you been here before?

B Yes, I **have**.

2 A **Have** you booked a bowling lane?

B No, I **haven't**.

- 3 Listen to four people making bookings. Match the people with the activities below.

a baseball game   a meal in a restaurant   a movie   a room in a hotel

1 Person 1 \_\_\_\_\_

3 Person 3 \_\_\_\_\_

2 Person 2 \_\_\_\_\_

4 Person 4 \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 **Pairwork** Read the information below. Then book a lane at the bowling alley.

### ★ STAR BOWLING ★

**Opening times:** Monday – Sunday 2 p.m. – 2 a.m.

**Prices:** 1 hour \$40 2 hours \$60

**Under 21s:** Saturday 2 p.m. – 8 p.m.

Sunday 2 p.m. – 8 p.m.

## Present perfect Interrogative and short answers

Have / Has	Subject	Past participle
Have	I / you / we / they	visited?
Has	he / she / it	visited?
Short answers		
Affirmative		Negative
Yes, I / you / we / they have.		No, I / you / we / they haven't.
Yes, he / she / it has.		No, he / she / it hasn't.

Rules p. W27

### 1 Write questions. Then write positive (✓) or negative (✗) short answers.

**Has Tom visited Spain. No, he hasn't.**

(Tom / visit) Spain? (✗)

- (she / read) this book? (✓)
- (Carlos / see) a baseball game? (✓)
- (they / meet) the President? (✗)
- (Mr. and Mrs. Brown / buy) that house? (✓)
- (Ellen / write) a lot of e-mails? (✗)
- (I / win) the competition? (✗)

## ever / never

### Think!

#### Read the sentences. Then complete the rules.

Have you **ever** heard of zorbing?

I've **never** done a bungee jump.

- We use **ever** in <sup>1</sup>affirmative / interrogative sentences.
- We use **never** in affirmative sentences with a <sup>2</sup>negative / positive meaning.

Rules p. W27

### 2 Complete the questions. Use the present perfect with **ever**. Then give true answers.

- Have you ever learned** (you / learn) a sport on vacation?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you / stay) at a camp?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you / try) scuba diving?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you / take) your bike on vacation?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you / play) tennis on vacation?
- \_\_\_\_\_ (your school / organize) a sports vacation for students?

### 3 Write two negative sentences for each affirmative sentence below.

Jun has been to Santiago.

**Jun hasn't been to Santiago.**

**Jun has never been to Santiago.**

- We have flown in an airplane.
- My teacher has met my parents.
- Nick has run a marathon.
- I've sung in a play at school.
- You've been to Hollywood.

## Present perfect / Simple past

### Think!

#### Read the sentences. Then answer the questions.

1 I've **flown** in an airplane.

2 I **flew** in an airplane in 2010.

- Which sentence has a specific time reference?
- Which sentence refers to a past action but has no reference to when the action happened?

Rules p. W27

### 4 Choose the correct answers.

I've bought / **bought** a great CD yesterday.

- We haven't seen / **didn't see** the Eiffel Tower.
- I broke / **have broken** my leg last year.
- We 've done / **did** a hip-hop dance course.
- Have you ever eaten / **Did you ever eat** Mexican food?
- I did / **have done** a parachute jump in 2004.

### 5 Complete the dialogues with the correct form of the verbs or a short answer.

A **Have you ever eaten** (you / ever / eat) Japanese food?

B Yes, I <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

A When <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (you / eat) it?

B I <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it last year in a sushi restaurant.

A <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (Su / ever / do) an exciting sport?

B Yes, she <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. She <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (do) a parachute jump!

### Finished?

#### Write five questions for your partner. Ask about ...

food sport travel transportation TV / movies

**Have you ever done a bungee jump?**

# They've done it!



## The Patterson family is back in Chicago after an amazing sabbatical!

**R**oss Patterson is only thirteen years old, but he's had a lot of exciting experiences. He's visited 29 different countries, he's flown in an airplane 36 times, he's made 47 journeys by boat, and he's traveled a total of 95,000 kilometers!

Ross's incredible journey started fourteen months ago when his parents, Joe and Karen, decided to have a family sabbatical. That means that they stopped their ordinary lives for twelve months and did something completely different! So what did they do? Well, they traveled around the world with Ross and his sister Louise, 17.

During the year, the family traveled to Europe, China, Indonesia, Australia, New Zealand, South America and finally back to the U.S! Things didn't always go well, "Louise lost her passport in Australia, Ross had terrible food poisoning in Indonesia, and we lost contact with Joe for 24 hours when he went canoeing in New Zealand!" says Karen. One of the highlights of the journey was the Great Barrier Reef in Australia. "Dad and I went scuba diving," says Ross, "and it was amazing."

Now the Pattersons are back at home in Chicago, and they are slowly returning to their normal everyday routine. Ross has started his new school and his sister, Louise, has begun a course at college. Joe and Karen have returned to work.

"It's great to be back" says Ross, "but I'm already planning my next adventure! This time without Mom and Dad! Next week, I'm going on a school trip to an adventure camp near Toronto. I'm really excited because I've never been to Canada!"

**1 Before you read** Read the title of the text and look at the photos. Then discuss the questions.

- 1 What do you think the Patterson family has done?
- 2 What do you think a "sabbatical" is?

## Reading

### 2 Read the article. Answer the questions.

- 1 How many countries has Ross Patterson been to?
- 2 How many times has he flown in an airplane?
- 3 Where did the family go on their incredible journey?
- 4 What problems did they have?
- 5 What did Ross and his dad do in Australia?
- 6 Why is Ross excited about the school trip next week?
- 7 Would you like to travel around the world with your family?
- 8 Which places in the world would you most like to visit? Why?

## Listening

### 3 Gemma and Harry are discussing the article about the Patterson family. Listen and decide who has done these things. Write Gemma or Harry.

Who ...

- |                              |              |
|------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 has never traveled abroad? | <u>Gemma</u> |
| 2 has been to Canada?        | _____        |
| 3 has flown in a helicopter? | _____        |
| 4 has visited New York?      | _____        |
| 5 has seen a famous person?  | _____        |
| 6 has tried scuba diving?    | _____        |



## Speaking

### 4 **Pairwork** Read the dialogue. Then ask and answer questions to find out which of the things in the box your partner has done.

do karaoke eat French food fly in an airplane see a famous person  
stay in a hotel ride a horse ~~visit the U.S.~~ win a competition

- A Have you ever done karaoke?  
B No, I haven't.  
B Have you ever visited the U.S?  
A Yes, I have.  
B When did you go there?  
A I went there in 2008.  
B Where did you go?  
A I went to Los Angeles.

## Writing

### 5 Write a short description of three exciting things you have done. (They can be real experiences or you can invent them.) Describe each experience:

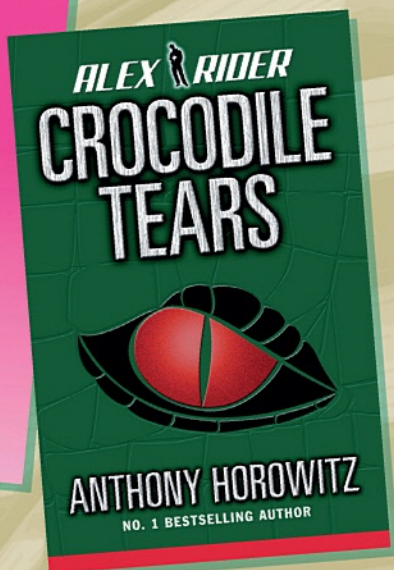
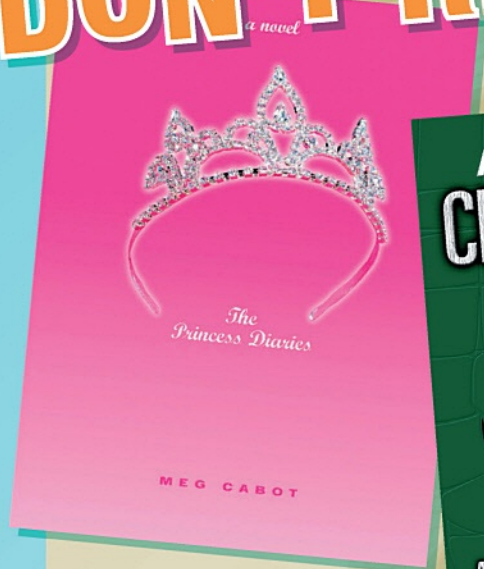
- When did you do it?
- How old were you?
- Who were you with?
- What happened?
- Did you enjoy it?

List two things that you've never done, but that you would like to do in the future. Give your reasons.

1  **Read and listen** Read the text and find the names of ...

- 1 four books by Meg Cabot. a \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 three books by Anthony Horowitz. a \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_

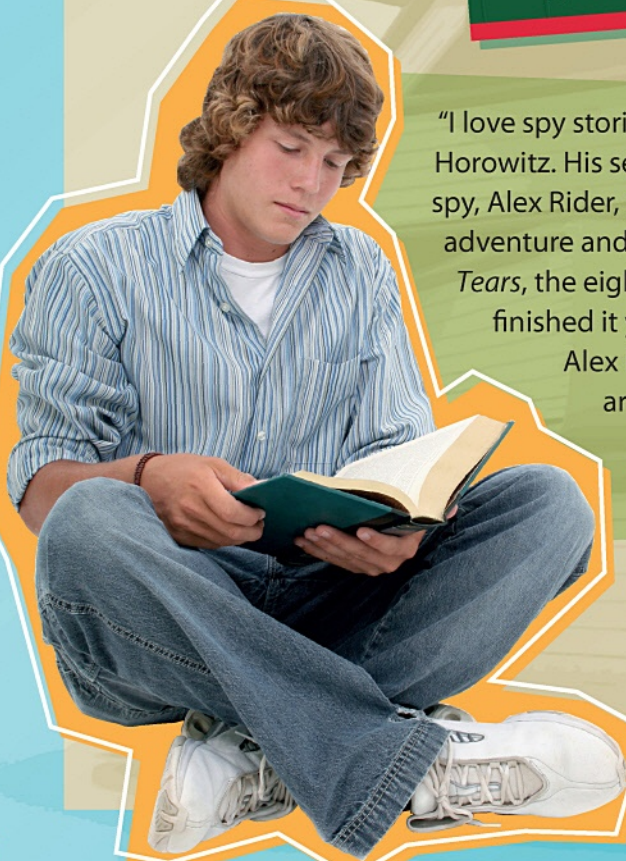
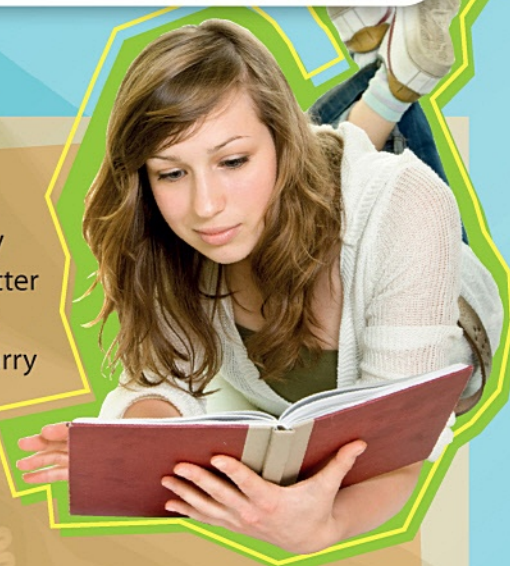
# WHO SAYS TEENAGERS DON'T READ?



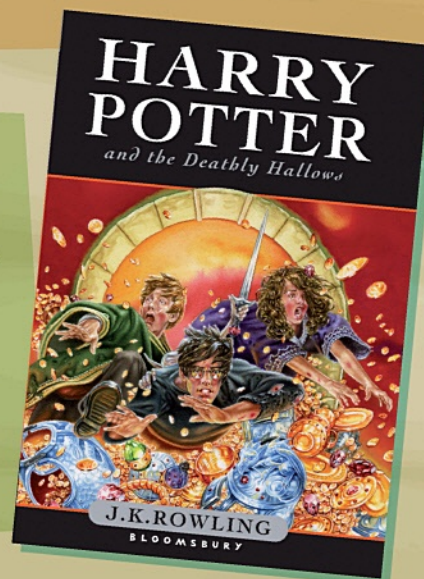
Book sales for teens have increased steadily since the first Harry Potter adventure appeared in 1997. "I started with Harry Potter when I was nine", says Melissa, now fifteen, "and I haven't stopped reading since then." So what type of books are teens reading?

"I love fantasy books and love stories. I've been a big fan of Meg Cabot for two years now. She writes the Princess Diaries books. They're about Mia, a teenage girl from New York who discovers that she is the princess of a small country. There are sixteen books in the series! I've already read the first two books *The Princess Diaries* and *Princess in the Spotlight*. They're awesome! I haven't finished *Princess in Love* yet, but I've already bought *Princess in Waiting*. They've made a movie of the Princess Diaries, but I prefer the books!"

**Jessica, 15**



"I love spy stories. My favorite writer is Anthony Horowitz. His series of books about the teenage spy, Alex Rider, is fantastic. The stories are full of adventure and suspense. I've just bought *Crocodile Tears*, the eighth book in the series. I haven't finished it yet. I've already read all the other Alex Rider stories. *Snakehead* and *Scorpio* are my favorites. I hope Horowitz writes lots more books about this character." **Ray, 16**



And what about teenagers who don't like reading? "Well, they simply haven't found the right book yet", says librarian Bob Harrison. "There's something for everyone so don't stop looking!"

## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 How old was Melissa when she started reading Harry Potter books?
- 2 What are *The Princess Diaries* about?
- 3 Does Jessica prefer the Princess Diaries books or the movie?
- 4 What kind of books does Ray like?
- 5 Who wrote the Alex Rider series of books?
- 6 What is Bob Harrison's advice to teens who don't like reading?

## Language focus

### 3 Read the article again. Say if these things have happened (✓) or haven't happened yet (x).

Book sales for teens have increased steadily since 1997.

- 1 Jessica has finished *The Princess Diaries* and *Princess in the Spotlight*.
- 2 Jessica has finished *Princess in Love*.
- 3 Jessica has bought *Princess in Waiting*.
- 4 Ray has finished *Crocodile Tears*.
- 5 Ray has read all the other Alex Rider stories.
- 6 Anthony Horowitz has written ten Alex Rider books.


### 4 What does Jessica say about each of the books in the Princess Diaries series? Choose a phrase from the box.

~~I've already read it.~~ I've already read it.  
 I've already bought it. I haven't finished it yet.



- 1 I've already read it.    2 \_\_\_\_\_    3 \_\_\_\_\_    4 \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Focus on you Look at the titles of the books and write if you have already read them or if you haven't read them yet.

The Princess Diaries    Twilight    Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone  
 Snakehead    The Lord of the Rings    The Golden Compass    The Outsiders

I've already read "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone".  
 I haven't read "The Outsiders" yet.

### 6 Pairwork Tell your partner the titles of three books you have already read and three books you haven't read yet. 🎭

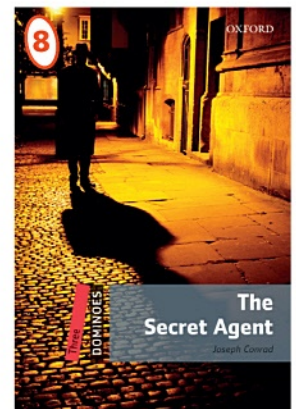
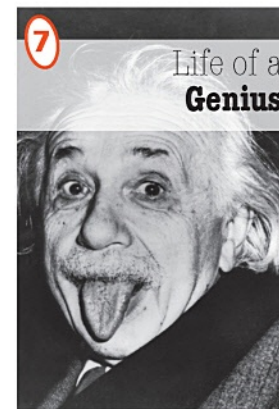
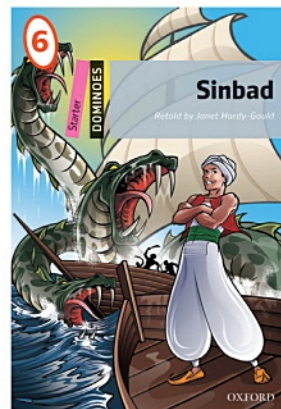
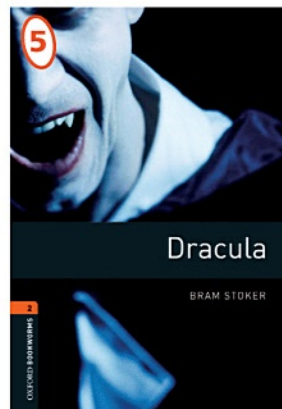
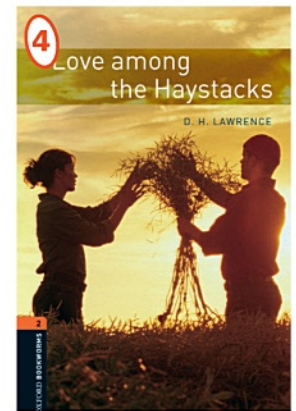
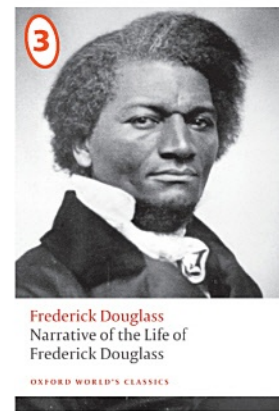
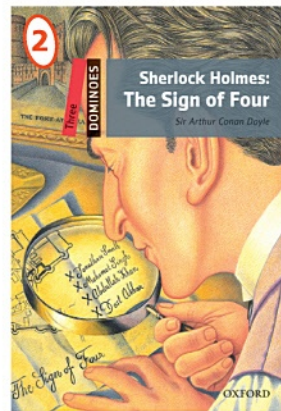
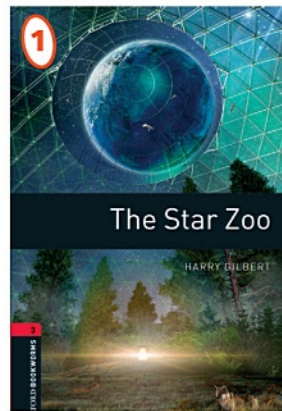
I've already read ...  
 I haven't read ... yet.

## Books

- 1  Match the book covers with the book types. Then listen and repeat.

autobiography biography detective story / crime story fantasy story  
horror story love story ~~science-fiction story~~ spy story


## 1 science fiction story



- 2 What type of books do these sentences come from? Match the words in the box to the sentences.

autobiography biography detective / crime story fantasy story  
horror story ~~love story~~ science fiction story spy story

- 1 "Sally knew that she was in love with Jack." love story
- 2 "The aliens from planet Nuworld slowly left the space ship." \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 "My earliest memory is of my grandmother." \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 "A secret agent's life isn't always exciting and nobody is really called Bond ... James Bond." \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 "Detective Sam Richardson understood murderers." \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 "Vampires are nocturnal creatures." \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 "Tuesday was a good day for Syrus. He killed three large dragons and a monster." \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 "Mozart was born in Austria in 1756." \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 **Pairwork** Invent the opening sentence of a book. Read the sentence to your partner and ask him / her to guess what type of book it is. 

## Present perfect + yet and already

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Complete the rules with **yet** and **already**.

Have you read *The Lord of the Rings* **yet**?

No, I haven't. I haven't read it **yet**.

Yes, I have. I've **already** read it.

- <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ comes before the past participle.
- <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ comes at the end of the sentence.

Rules p.W32

### 1 Choose the correct answers.

Have you finished your science project already / **yet**?

- Anna hasn't decided which dress to wear already / yet.
- Jonathan has already / yet done his homework.
- Jacob hasn't started his karate lessons already / yet.
- I have already / yet sent an e-mail to Mr. Parker.
- My parents have already / yet had breakfast.
- Have you spoken with Jill already / yet?

### 2 Write the sentences in the correct order.

sent / have / yet / you / the / e-mail?

**Have you sent the e-mail yet?**

- movie / started / hasn't / the / yet
- science / finished / yet / has / Joe / his / project?
- I've / washed / already / the / dishes
- the dog / he / for / a walk / yet / taken / has?
- woken up / they / yet / haven't
- Mark / finished / has / already / *The Lord of the Rings*

### 3 Look at Jill's list. Say what she has already done (✓) and what she hasn't done yet (X).

**She's already made the beds.**

**She hasn't washed the dishes yet.**

To do:			
Make the beds	(✓)	Do the grocery shopping	(✓)
Wash the dishes	(X)	Clean the bathroom	(✓)
Feed the cat	(✓)	Clean the living room	(X)
Water the plants	(X)	Take out the trash	(X)

### 4 Read the e-mail. Choose the correct answers.

Hi, Rob

We're having a fantastic time in Vancouver. We only arrived two days ago, but we've **already** / yet done lots of things. I've <sup>1</sup>already / yet taken lots of photos, but I <sup>2</sup>haven't / have put them on my web page yet. We had a picnic in Stanley Park today, but we <sup>3</sup>haven't / have been to the Science Museum or the Aquarium yet. I think we'll go there tomorrow. On Saturday, Dad and I are going to a classic motorcycle exhibition. We <sup>4</sup>haven't / have already bought the tickets. I can't wait! Has Kate written to you <sup>5</sup>already / yet? Is she enjoying her vacation in Hawaii?  
Andy



### 5 Game! Guess three things your partner has already done and three things he / she hasn't done yet today. Write them down.

- He / She's already made her bed.
- He / She hasn't eaten lunch yet.

**Ask your partner questions to see if your guesses are correct.**

A Have you made your bed yet?

B Yes, I've already make my bed. / No, I haven't made my bed yet.

**You get one point for each correct guess.**

**The winner is the person with more points.**


### Finished?

Use the information in exercise 5 to write a paragraph about what your partner has already done or hasn't done yet.

**Marta has already made her bed, but she hasn't cleaned her room yet.**



## Buying presents / souvenirs

- 1  Julia is in a bookstore. Complete the dialogue with the sentences in the box. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.


~~Can I help you~~ Here's your change    How much does it cost  
I'd like to get    I'll take it    What about

- Salesclerk Good morning. Can I help you?  
 Julia Yes, please. I'm looking for a present for my dad. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ him a book.  
 Salesclerk Well, what kind of books does he read?  
 Julia He loves crime stories.  
 Salesclerk Has he read *The Scarpetta Factor* by Patricia Cornwell? It's a bestseller.  
 Julia Yes, he has. He's already read it. He loved it.  
 Salesclerk <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ *Southern Cross* then? It's by the same writer. I've just finished it.  
 It's great!  
 Julia Cool! <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Salesclerk It's \$10, but there's a sale at the moment. There's a 10% discount so that's \$9.  
 Julia Great. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Here you are.  
 Salesclerk <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and your receipt.  
 Julia Thanks.

You hear	You say
Can I help you?	No, thanks. I'm just looking. Yes, please. I'm looking for ...
What about ...?	No, I don't think so. I think he'd / she'd like that.
There's a sale at the moment.	
There's a 10% discount.	

- 2  **Pronunciation** Listen to the pronunciation of the letter *h*. Then listen and repeat.


1 him    2 he    3 has    4 how    5 here

- 3  Listen to three people buying some souvenirs. Then answer the questions about each person.



	What do they buy?	Who is it for?	How much do they spend?
1			
2			
3			



- 4 **Pairwork** Imagine you are buying a present for a family member or a friend. Role-play the scene in the store. Take turns to be the customer and the salesclerk. 

## Present perfect + just

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then circle the correct alternative.

I've **just finished** reading it.

She's **just started** her second book.

- We use *just* in <sup>1</sup>affirmative / negative sentences.
- just* comes <sup>2</sup>before / after *have* or *has*.

Rules p.W32

### 1 Complete the dialogues with *just* and the present perfect of the verbs in the box.

finish go have **start** send

A Do you like the new book by Charlie Higson?

B I'm not sure yet. I **'ve just started** it.

1 A Where's Michael?

B He \_\_\_\_\_ to school. He left a few minutes ago.

2 A Would you like something to eat?

B No, we \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

3 A Does Jill know where to meet us?

B Yes, she does. I \_\_\_\_\_ her a text message.

4 A Have you done your homework?

B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ it. It was really easy!

### 2 What has just happened? Use the prompts to write a sentence for each drawing.

clean / her bedroom ~~lose / the game~~  
score / a goal see / a movie



**They've just lost the game.**



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_

## Present perfect + for / since

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then complete the rules with *for* and *since*.

I've **studied** English **for** three years.

I've **studied** Japanese **since** 2008.

- We use <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with the length of time.
- We use <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with the starting point in the past.

Rules p.W33

### 3 Complete the time expressions with *for* or *since*.

**since** March 4 \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday

1 \_\_\_\_\_ a month 5 \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes

2 \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday 6 \_\_\_\_\_ eight o'clock

3 \_\_\_\_\_ two hours 7 \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks

### 4 Write sentences using the present perfect and *for* or *since*.

He / be / in his room / half an hour.

**He's been in his room for half an hour.**

1 They / have / that car / 2001

2 She / know / him / six months

3 I / be / here / seven o'clock

4 She / work / in this school / five years

5 Mr. Taylor / live / in London / September

6 She / be / on the phone / two hours

### 5 Complete the text with *for* or *since*.

Brett Omarson has joined the *Shanghai Tigers* – he is their new guitarist. Brett has lived in New York **for** five years. He has been friends with the other guys in the band <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ they met three years ago. The *Shanghai Tigers* have been popular <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ over ten years now. They had their first number one in 2005 and they have made four successful CDs <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ then. But they haven't made a new CD <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ 2009. "We've been on tour <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ almost a year, so we haven't had time to write songs and record", says singer Jett Parker. "But this summer we're going back to the studio to make a new album."

### Finished?

Write three things that you've just done.

**I've just finished exercise 5.**

# COFFEE WITH CRIME



It was ten o'clock and the coffee shop was almost empty.

"So, you've just been abroad," the woman said. "Where were you?"

"I was in Australia," the man answered. "I've only been back since Monday."

"Australia? Wow! I've never been there! What's it like?" she asked.

"I'm not sure," he replied. "I didn't see very much of it."

He stopped. There was a server next to their table. She had a coffee pot in her hand. He waited for her to pour the coffee and then he continued. "I only went there for work," he said.

"What exactly do you do?" asked the woman. "You've never told me."

"That's because it's top secret," he said with a smile, "but it's very exciting. This month I've flown an airplane, done a parachute jump, and met a famous politician!"

"Oh come on! Tell me! I'm your friend!"

"Really, I can't tell you," he insisted.

"You're very mysterious. Is your job dangerous?"

"Yes, it is. I risk my life every day." He replied.

"Do you have a gun?" she asked.

He looked around the room. The only other person in the coffee shop was the server. She was busy and she didn't seem interested in their conversation.

"Yes, I have a gun," he said quietly.

"Have you ever used it? Have you ever killed anyone?" his friend asked with a shocked expression on her face.

"Yes, I have," he said slowly, "I've killed lots of people. The last time was a week ago in Australia."

The server walked quickly out of the room and picked up her cell phone. She called a number and her boss at secret services MI9 answered.

"We have him," she said. "He's just admitted the murder. Send the special forces now!"

"Well done, agent 006," her boss replied.

## Reading

### 1 Read the story and answer the question.

1 Who is agent 006?

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 When did the man return from Australia?
- 2 What does the server do when she comes to the table?
- 3 Why hasn't the man told his friend what work he does?
- 4 How does the man describe his job?
- 5 When was the last time the man killed someone?
- 6 Who does the server call on her cell phone?

## Listening

### 3 Listen to an interview with Lee about his reading habits. Complete the text.

Lee likes reading <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. He also likes <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of famous people. His favorite author is Charlie Higson because he likes <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. He hates <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 Who is Lee's favorite author?
- 2 What is his favorite book?
- 3 How often does Lee read?
- 4 When does he read?
- 5 How many books has he read since the beginning of the year?
- 6 What types of books does he like?
- 7 What types of books does he hate?
- 8 What was the last book he bought?

## Speaking

### 5 **Pairwork** Ask your partner questions about a book he / she has read recently. Complete the questionnaire with his / her answers.

- 1 What was the last book you read? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who wrote it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What type of book was it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What was the book about? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Who were the main characters? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What did you like and what didn't you like about the book?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Have you read any other books by the author? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Choose three words to describe the book: \_\_\_\_\_

## Writing

### 6 Write a review of a book you have read. Use the questionnaire in exercise 5 to help you organize your review.

## Vocabulary

## 1 Match the parts of the verbs in A and B.

- | A        | B                  |
|----------|--------------------|
| 1 do     | a a soccer game    |
| 2 fly    | b camping          |
| 3 go     | c a roller coaster |
| 4 meet   | d abroad           |
| 5 watch  | e a parachute jump |
| 6 stay   | f in an airplane   |
| 7 ride   | g in a hotel       |
| 8 travel | h a famous person  |

## 2 Recommend a type of book for each reader.

"I like stories about dark nights, empty houses, and strange noises!"

**horror story**

1 "I want to read about people falling in love."  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 "I like reading about criminals and their motives."  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 "I love stories about extraterrestrials and alien universes."  
\_\_\_\_\_

4 "I want to read about monsters!"  
\_\_\_\_\_

5 "I like reading about real people and their lives."  
\_\_\_\_\_

6 "I like reading about secret agents."  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

## 3 Complete the postcard. Use the present perfect form of the verbs.

Hello from London!  
We're having a great time! We **have done** (do) a lot of interesting things. We <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the London Eye and we <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the Science Museum. We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) everywhere. And we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) some great food - Thai, Mexican, Italian, and Chinese. We <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / have) any bad meals! The stores are cool, too. Mom <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) a lot of money! The weather <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) great, but luckily it <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / rain).  
See you soon!  
Nicky

## 4 Write questions. Use the present perfect and ever. Then write true answers.

your mom / play soccer?

**Has your mom ever played soccer?**

**No, my mom's never played soccer. / Yes, my mom's played soccer.**

- you / visit / New York?
- you / sing / in a school concert?
- your dad / be / in a newspaper?
- Brazil / win / the Soccer World Cup?
- you / try / a dangerous sport?
- your English teacher / meet / your parents?

## 5 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the dialogues.

A **Have you ever been** (you / ever be) to Australia?

B Yes, I have. I **went** (go) to Sydney with my family last year.

1 A I can't find my cell phone! <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / see) it?

B Yes, I have. It <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) under the sofa, but I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (put) it on the coffee table.

2 A <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / ever meet) a famous person?

B Yes, I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Taylor Swift at a party five years ago.

3 A <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / see) the new *Transformers* movie?

B No, I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but Pete <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) it last week.



6 Look at the list of what a group of students have and haven't done in New York. Write sentences with the present perfect and yet / already.

Rodrigo hasn't taken the New York movie tour yet.  
Milagros has already seen a Broadway musical.



- Rodrigo Take the New York movie tour X
- Milagros See a Broadway musical ✓
- Mizuho Visit the Statue of Liberty X
- Kana Go to the Metropolitan Museum of Art ✓
- Abel Eat at the Hard Rock Cafe in Times Square X
- Tatsuya Go cycling in Central Park ✓

7 Choose the correct answers.

Hi, Katy  
We've moved just / just moved into our new apartment in Florida! I've <sup>1</sup>just / yet finished organizing my books and DVDs, but I haven't put any posters or photos on my walls <sup>2</sup>just / yet. I've <sup>3</sup>already / yet met our new neighbors. They are from Bolivia, but they've lived in Florida <sup>4</sup>for / since five years. The weather <sup>5</sup>has been / was really hot, but I <sup>6</sup>haven't been / wasn't to the beach yet. I've already <sup>7</sup>been / gone downtown and the stores are great.  
I miss everybody in Baltimore. I hope you can all come and visit me soon!  
Milly

Got it?

8 Read the text. The crossed out words are incorrect. Replace them with the correct forms.

**Blake High School**

## Welcome to the Blake High School Book Club.

Blake High School has ~~have~~ had a book club since <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ five years. Thirty students have ~~yet~~ <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ joined the club this year and the first term hasn't finished just <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

This week's book suggestion is *City of the Beasts* by Isabel Allende.

Isabel Allende has written books since <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ over thirty years and she's ~~win~~ <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of prizes. She has ~~wrote~~ <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ three books about Alex and Nadia.

*City of the Beasts* is about a boy called Alex. He has ~~arrive~~ <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in New York to stay with his aunt, an explorer. She ~~have~~ <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ decided to take him on a journey to South America. Alex and his aunt meet a girl called Nadia and they travel down the Amazon River. They hear stories about explorers who have ~~went~~ <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ into the forest and have ~~ever~~ <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ come back.

9 Answer the questions.

- 1 How long has the Blake School Book Club existed?
- 2 How long has Isabel Allende been a writer?
- 3 How many students have joined the club this year?
- 4 How many books has Isabel Allende written about Alex and Nadia?
- 5 What has Alex's aunt decided to do?
- 6 What has happened to the explorers?

Home

About us

About Alaska

Tours

Groups

Contact us

## ▼ Alaska – the last frontier!

### Alaska – the state of adventure!

Have you ever climbed a glacier?  
Have you ever seen a bear?  
Have you ever searched for gold?  
Are you looking for fun and  
adventure? You'll find it in Alaska!  
A vacation with Alaska Adventure  
Tours can change your life!

[More >](#)



### Check out our tours!

#### The Fjords

Arrive in the city of Ketchikan and go by boat to the spectacular Misty Fjords. Here you can see mountains, waterfalls, and wildlife including sea lions, hump back and orca whales, and bald eagles.

[More >](#)

#### Bear watching

Take a boat trip to Anan Creek for bear watching. Watch black and brown bears while they hunt for salmon in the river. [More >](#)

#### Get active!

Take a floatplane and fly to the Gates of the Arctic National Park in the north of Alaska. The Gates of the Arctic National park is a



beautiful place with many mountains, valleys, and rivers. In the park you can go hiking, mountain biking, kayaking, or glacier climbing, and of course you must look out for the amazing wildlife – birds, bears, flowers ... [More >](#)



#### The Gold Rush

Take a journey into the past. In 1897 a Great Gold Rush started and thousands of people traveled to Alaska to find their fortunes. Today you can re-live the experience! Search for gold in the Klondike river and visit the historic gold rush town of Skagway. [More >](#)

#### Native Alaskan culture

Visit The Alaska Native Heritage Center in Anchorage and discover the history, art, lifestyles, and traditions of Alaska's eleven native cultural groups. Listen to traditional stories and songs and take part in art and dance classes. [More >](#)

### Your say!

I've been to Alaska with Alaska Adventure Tours three times. I've seen some of the most beautiful places in the world. What are you waiting for?

**Nigel Wex, Boston.**

Thanks to Alaska Adventure Tours I've traveled by helicopter and floatplane and I've been kayaking and mountain biking! I've seen sea lions, whales, bears, and eagles. Awesome! Just do it!

**Rita Li, San Francisco**

- 1 Read the web page. How many different types of tour does Alaska Adventure Tours organize?
- 2 Answer the questions.
  - 1 What animals and birds can you see in the Misty Fjords?
  - 2 Why do bears go to Anan Creek?
  - 3 How can you get to the Gates of the Arctic National Park?
  - 4 When did the Alaskan Gold Rush start?
  - 5 How many Native Alaskan cultural groups are there?
  - 6 What activities can you do in The Alaska Native Heritage Center?
  - 7 How many tours has Nigel been on?
  - 8 What exciting things has Rita Li done with Alaska Adventure Tours?
- 3 Focus on you Write about a popular tourist region in your country. Answer the questions.
  - Where is it?
  - What time of year is it popular for tourism?
  - What are its main attractions?
  - Where can you stay?
  - How can you get there and how can you travel around?
  - What cultural / leisure / sports activities can you do?

## Speaking and writing

**1** I can describe what I have or haven't done in my life. **B1**

I've ridden a horse.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**4** I can make a reservation by phone. **B1**

Can I book a bowling lane, please?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**2** I can ask my partner about his/her experiences. **B1**

When did you win a competition?

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**5** I can identify different types of books. **B1**

autobiography

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**3** I can describe an exciting experience in my life. **B1**

I went to New York when I was ten.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**6** I can have a conversation in a bookstore. **B1**

I'd like to buy a book.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

## Reading, listening, and writing

		Got it?			
		Yes	I'm not sure	No	
<b>7</b>	I can read and understand a text about a strange sport.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>8</b>	I can read and understand a text about teenagers' reading habits.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>9</b>	I can read and understand a text about a family's vacation.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>10</b>	I can write a book review.	B1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



**1**  **Read and listen** Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What did the girl steal from Kate?  
 a her cell phone      b her jacket      c her bag
- 2 What did the boy steal from Andy?  
 a his bike      b his MP3 player      c his sneakers

## DON'T BE A VICTIM OF STREET CRIME!

A cell phone, a new bike, or an MP3 player – these are all things you'd probably like to have. But thieves also like to have them and often steal them! Every day young people are the victims of street crime. Read what Kate and Andy say about their experiences and then read our safety tips.



"I was cycling with my friend Jason. We stopped at a café to get something to eat. We left our bikes outside. We didn't lock them, but we sat at the window. While the server was taking our order I looked out the window. A guy was standing near my bike, but he wasn't looking at it. I ordered my food and when I looked out the window again the guy was stealing my bike! I ran out of the café and followed the thief on Jason's bike, but he disappeared. I felt so stupid!"

**Andy, 17**

"I was waiting at a bus stop with my friend Amy. We saw two girls across the road. They were talking and laughing, but they weren't looking at us. My cell phone rang and I answered it. That was a mistake! The girls crossed the road and one of them asked to use my phone, and I said "No!". She hit me and stole my cell phone! Then the two girls ran away."

**Kate, 16**



### Be safe on the street!

- Plan your journey and try to travel with others
- Keep your possessions out of sight
- Put your wallet in an inside jacket or pants pocket
- Only use your cell phone when it's safe
- Only take what you need when you go out

## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Kate when the girls stole her phone?
- 2 How many girls did Kate see?
- 3 What mistake did Kate make?
- 4 Why did Andy and Jason stop cycling?
- 5 Where did they sit in the café?
- 6 What did Andy do when the guy stole his bike?

## Language focus

### 3 Complete the sentences with information from the text. Then put them in the correct order to tell Andy's story.

- \_\_\_\_\_ We \_\_\_\_\_ our bikes outside.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ my food and when I \_\_\_\_\_ out the window again the guy \_\_\_\_\_ my bike!
- \_\_\_\_\_ While the server \_\_\_\_\_ our order I \_\_\_\_\_ out the window.
- 1 I **was cycling** with my friend Jason.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A guy \_\_\_\_\_ near my bike, but he \_\_\_\_\_ at it.
- \_\_\_\_\_ We \_\_\_\_\_ them, but we \_\_\_\_\_ at the window.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ of the café and \_\_\_\_\_ the thief on Jason's bike, but he \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ We \_\_\_\_\_ at a café to get something to eat.

### 4 Listen to Tom's story. Choose the correct answers.

It was seven fifteen / thirty in the morning.

- 1 Tom was walking / running to school.
- 2 He was carrying his sneakers and a bag / in a bag.
- 3 He saw four / five boys.
- 4 The boys were standing at the corner / a bus stop.
- 5 One of the boys stopped Tom and pushed / hit him.

### 5 Focus on you Were you doing these activities at these times yesterday?

8 a.m.	having breakfast
8:30 a.m.	traveling to school
10 a.m.	having an English lesson
1 p.m.	having lunch
3 p.m.	playing soccer
5 p.m.	doing my homework
7 p.m.	watching TV
1 a.m.	sleeping

I was / wasn't having breakfast at 8 a.m. yesterday.

### 6 Pairwork Tell your partner what activities you were or weren't doing yesterday.

## Crime

1  Match the pictures with the verbs below. Then listen and repeat.

kidnap someone   mug someone   ~~murder someone~~   pick someone's pocket  
rob a bank   shoplift   steal a painting   vandalize a building

1 murder someone



### Look!

**steal (v) / theft (n):** to take something from a person without their permission

**rob (v) / robbery (n):** to enter a building and take something from a person by force

2  Complete the chart with the words in the box. Then listen and repeat.

kidnapper   mugger   murderer   pickpocket  
~~robber~~   shoplifter   thief   vandal

Crime	Criminal
rob a bank	1 <u>robber</u>
vandalize a building	2 _____
steal a painting	3 _____
shoplift	4 _____
mug someone	5 _____
pick someone's pocket	6 _____
murder someone	7 _____
kidnap someone	8 _____

3 **Pairwork** Put the crimes in the chart in order from the most serious (1) to the least serious (8). 

1 murder someone

## Past progressive Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	Negative
I was playing	I wasn't playing
you were playing	you weren't playing
he / she / it was playing	he / she / it wasn't playing
we / you / they were playing	we / you / they weren't playing

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.  
We **were waiting** at the bus stop.  
They **weren't looking** at us.
- We use the past progressive to describe an action in progress in the past / that started in the past and continues in the present.

Rules p.W38

### 1 Complete the sentences with the past progressive form of the verbs.

Dylan **was doing** (do) homework all day.  
We **weren't working** (not work) this morning.

- Max \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a horror movie.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (write) e-mails all morning.
- Troy \_\_\_\_\_ (not listen) to his teacher.
- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (not wear) jeans yesterday.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ (talking) on the phone all evening!
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my grandma this morning.

## Past progressive Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	Short answers	
	Affirmative	Negative
Was I playing?	Yes, I was.	No, I wasn't.
Were you playing?	Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.
Was he / she / it playing?	Yes, he / she / it was.	No, he / she / it wasn't.
Were we / you / they playing?	Yes, you / we / they were.	No, you / we / they weren't.

Rules p.W38

### 2 Write questions in the past progressive. Then give true short answers.

you / walk to school / at eight o'clock?  
**Were you walking to school at eight o'clock?**  
**Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.**

- you / watch TV / at seven o'clock last night
- your parents / have dinner / at eight o'clock?
- the students / do a test / at eleven o'clock?
- your sister / talk with you on the phone / yesterday afternoon?
- you / wear sneakers / yesterday?
- you / sleep / at ten o'clock / last night?

## while

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then complete the rule.  
**While** I was doing my homework, I was texting my friends.  
We were watching TV **while** Mom was cooking.
- We use \_\_\_\_\_ to link two simultaneous actions in the past.

Rules p. W39

### 3 Write sentences. Use the past progressive.

John / play / basketball / while / Peter / take / photos of the game

**John was playing basketball while Peter was taking photos of the game.**

- I / not / listen / while / you / speak
- You / sleep / while / I / watch / the movie
- While / Susie / walk / she / listen / to music
- While / they / run / they / chat
- While / their dad / drive / the children / look / out of the window


### Finished?

Say what you were and weren't doing at these times.

three o'clock last Saturday afternoon  
five o'clock yesterday afternoon  
eight o'clock this morning  
at nine o'clock last night

**I was walking to school at eight o'clock this morning. I wasn't watching TV.**

## Reporting a crime

- 1  Complete the dialogue with the questions in the box. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.


~~Can I help you?~~ What did the boys look like? What did they do? What happened?  
What time did it happen? What was in the bag? What were you doing?

Officer Can I help you?  
 Ian Yes, I want to report a crime.  
 Officer 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian Some boys stole my bag.  
 Officer 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian I was walking along Carmine Street when two boys stopped me.  
 Officer 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian One boy pushed me and the other boy stole my bag. Then they ran away.  
 Officer 4 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian It happened at four o'clock this afternoon.  
 Officer 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian Some books, my wallet, some money, and my keys.  
 Officer 6 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Ian They were fifteen or sixteen. They were wearing jeans and jackets.

### You hear

### You say

Can I help you?	I'd like to report a crime.
What happened?	A girl / boy / some boys stole my ...
Where / When did it happen?	It happened in the park / last night.
What did he / she / they look like?	He / She was tall. / They were tall ...
What was he / she / were they wearing?	He / She was wearing. / They were wearing ...


- 2  **Pronunciation** Listen to the pronunciation of the sound /ə/ in the sentences. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 What was in the **e** bag?
- 2 What **were** you doing?
- 3 He was walking **along the e** street.
- 4 They **were** wearing jeans.

- 3  Listen to two people reporting crimes. Complete the crime report forms.

Place: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Time: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Item(s) stolen: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Number of suspects: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Description of suspect(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Place: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Time: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Item(s) stolen: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Number of suspects: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Description of suspect(s): \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 **Pairwork** Imagine you are reporting a crime. 

A You are reporting a theft. Make notes about the following:

- Where?
- When?
- Stolen items?
- What did the thief / thieves look like?

B You are a police officer. Copy the crime report form from exercise 3. Ask questions and fill in the information.

## Past progressive and simple past + when / while

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

He was walking to school **when** some boys stole his sneakers.

Some boys stole his sneakers **while** he was walking to school.

- We use the <sup>1</sup>simple past / past progressive for the interrupting action.
- We use the <sup>2</sup>simple past / past progressive for the longer action.

Rules p. W39

### 1 Match the sentence halves.

- |                                    |            |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 While I was taking a shower,     | <u> f </u> |
| 2 Mary fell asleep                 | _____      |
| 3 While we were walking to school, | _____      |
| 4 He was mugging an old lady       | _____      |
| 5 While I was changing money,      | _____      |
| 6 When I saw the boys              | _____      |

- a when the police officer saw him.
- b a robber ran into the bank.
- c we saw an accident.
- d while she was reading.
- e they were vandalizing a phone box.
- f the doorbell rang.

### 2 Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use the past progressive or the simple past.

I was doing my homework when **my sister got home.**

- While my best friend was walking to school, \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ when my mom opened the door.
- While our cat was sleeping on the sofa, \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ when the teacher called my name.
- \_\_\_\_\_ while two men were robbing the bank.
- While he was listening to the radio, \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Complete the text. Use the past progressive or simple past of the verbs.

call pay put run see steal wait



Yesterday, I was in a store and I **was waiting** to pay. There was a woman and two men in front of me. While the woman <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, one of the men <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his hand into her pocket and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her cell phone. The salesclerk <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ him and shouted. While she <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the police, the man <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ away.

### 4 Game! Write a crime story. Use the words in the box to help you. Read your story to the class.

call hear look see vandalize watch

### Finished?

#### Use your imagination to complete these sentences.

When I arrived at Kim's birthday party, ...

While I was traveling to school this morning, ...

While I was doing this exercise, ...



# THE HOUND *of The* BASKERVILLES

**O**ne morning, Doctor James Mortimer visits detective Sherlock Holmes and his friend Doctor Watson in their rooms at 221B Baker Street, London. Doctor Mortimer tells them about the death of his friend Sir Charles Baskerville. People think Sir Charles's death is part of a 200-year-old family curse. They believe the monstrous Hound of the Baskervilles killed the old man.

Doctor Mortimer got up from his chair. While he was leaving Holmes said, "One more question, Dr Mortimer. You said that before Sir Charles's death some people saw this strange creature."

"Yes, three people saw it," said Mortimer.

"Did anyone see it after the death?"

"No, I don't think so."

"Thank you, Dr. Mortimer. Goodbye."

After Mortimer left us, Holmes sat down in his chair. I knew that he needed to be alone to think about the case. I went out for the day. When I came back Holmes was smoking his pipe and the room was full of smoke.

"What do you think of this case?" I asked him.

"It's hard to say. When Sir Charles died he was running – running for his life. He ran until his heart stopped and he fell dead."

"What was he running from?" I asked.

"That is a difficult question," said Holmes.

"I think he was crazy with fear. He didn't know what he was doing. That explains why he ran away from the house instead of towards it. He was running away from help! The next question is: who was he waiting for that night? And why was he waiting outside and not in the house?"



## Reading

### 1 Read the text and answer the questions.



- 1 Who is Doctor Watson?
- 2 Where does Sherlock Holmes live?
- 3 Who is Sir Charles Baskerville?
- 4 What do people think happened to Sir Charles Baskerville?

- 2 Sherlock Holmes is a great detective, but he isn't very good at taking notes! Look at the notes he made about the case and correct the sentences.**

Three people saw the strange creature after Sir Charles's death.  
*Three people saw the strange creature before Sir Charles's death.*

- 1 Sir Charles was walking when he died.
- 2 Sir Charles died because the Hound of the Baskerville killed him.
- 3 Sir Charles was running towards the house when he died.
- 4 Sir Charles wasn't afraid when he died.
- 5 Sir Charles was waiting for someone in the house.

## Listening


- 3**  **Detective Clues is investigating the murder of Sir Henry Fielding. Listen to his conversation with a suspect. What was the suspect doing when he last saw Sir Henry?**
- 4**  **Listen again and complete the detective's notes.**

What is the name of the suspect? Alain Dupont

- 1 What is his job? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 When did he see Sir Henry last?  
Day: \_\_\_\_\_ Time: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Where did he see him? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Did he speak to Sir Henry? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What happened while they were talking? \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 There is something strange in the suspect's answers. Can you spot it? Check the answer at the bottom of the page.**

## Speaking


- 6 Pairwork** Ask and answer questions about your favorite detective stories. 
- Do you like detective stories?
  - Do you have a favorite crime writer?
  - Do you watch detective stories on TV?
  - What's your favorite TV detective drama?

## Writing

- 7 Write a short paragraph about your favorite detective from a book, movie, or TV series.**
- What's his / her name?
  - Where's he / she from?
  - What does he / she look like?
  - What type of crimes does he / she investigate?
  - Explain what you like in particular about this detective.
- My favorite detective is ...*

Exercise 5 Key: He said he was making lunch at 5:30 p.m.



1  **Read and listen** Complete the chart about Sir Tim Berners-Lee.

Sir Tim Berners-Lee	
Occupation:	1 _____
Nationality:	2 _____
Famous for:	3 _____

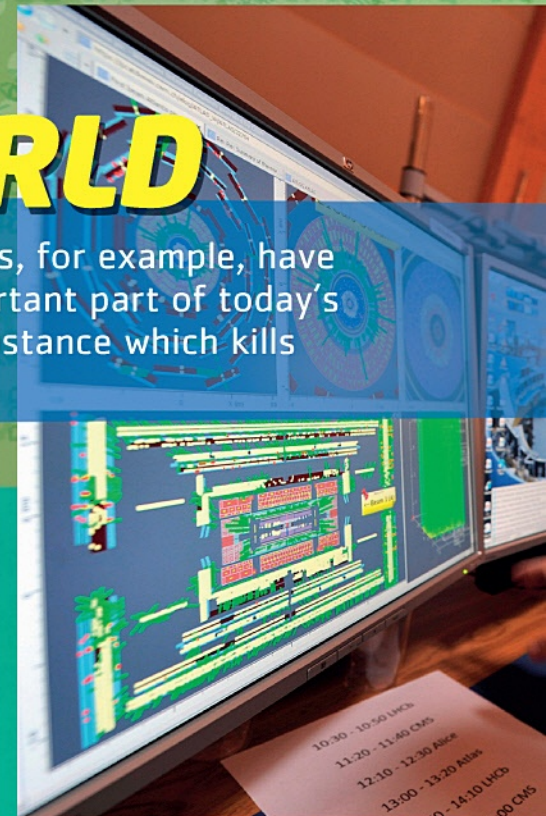
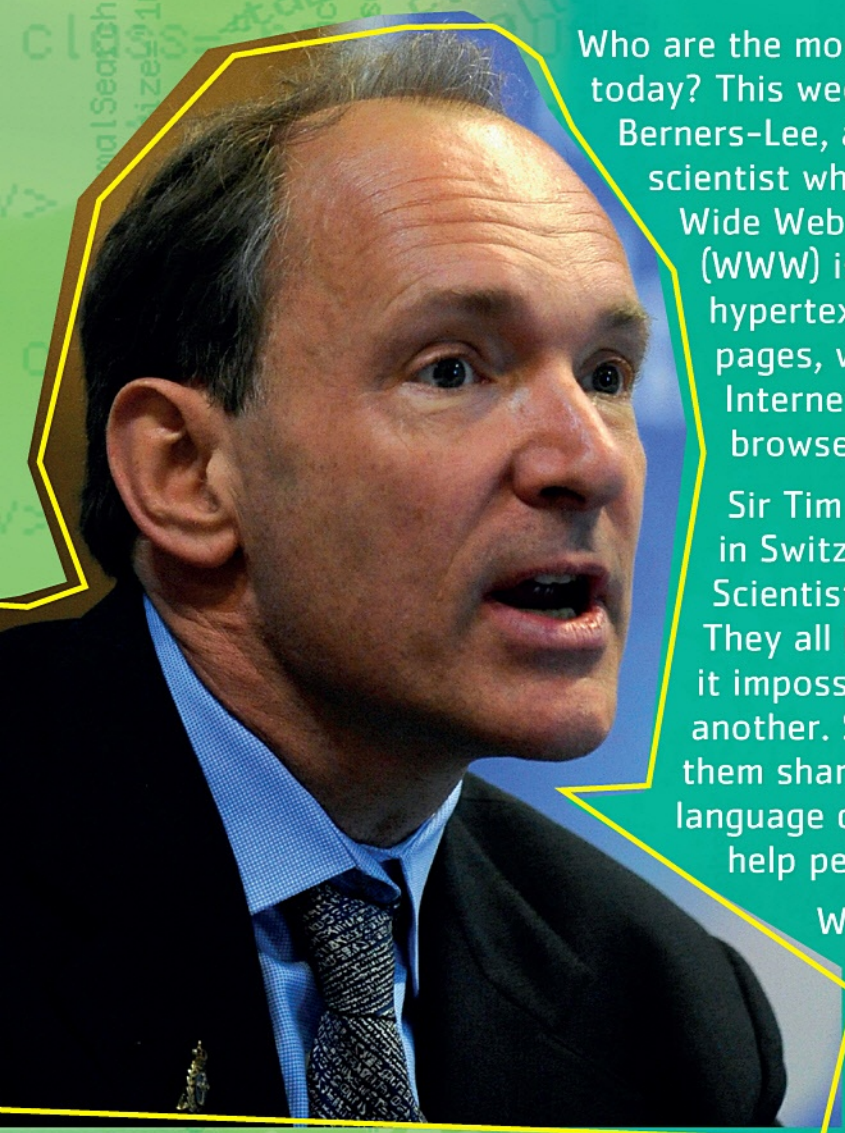
## PEOPLE WHO HAVE CHANGED THE WORLD

A lot of people have changed our lives in the last 100 years. Inventors, for example, have created the microchip, a small electronic component which is an important part of today's computers and televisions. Scientists have discovered penicillin, a substance which kills bacteria, and DNA, a molecule that forms the basis of life.

Who are the most important people today? This week we consider Sir Tim Berners-Lee, a British computer scientist who invented the World Wide Web. The World Wide Web (WWW) is a system of linked hypertext documents, or web pages, which is part of the Internet. You can access these pages through a web browser.

Sir Tim had the idea for the Web while he was working in Switzerland at a famous laboratory called CERN. Scientists came from all over the world to work at CERN. They all had different types of computers and they found it impossible to send information from one computer to another. Sir Tim wrote some special programs to help them share information. Eventually he wrote a computer language called HTML (HyperText Markup Language) to help people send and receive computer files.

When Sir Tim connected his computer language to the Internet the World Wide Web was born! Scientists at CERN created the first hypertext website and they put it online on August 6<sup>th</sup>, 1991. Today there are more than 50 billion websites! People use the Web to buy and sell things, look for information, listen to music, write blogs, show their photos, and much more!



## 2 Comprehension Answer the questions.

- 1 What examples of scientific discovery are mentioned in the text?
- 2 When did Sir Tim Berners-Lee have the idea for the World Wide Web?
- 3 What problem did scientists at CERN have in the past?
- 4 What computer language did Sir Tim Berners-Lee write?
- 5 What did the language help people do?
- 6 When was the first hypertext website put onto the Internet?

## Language focus

### 3 Rewrite the two sentences with one sentence. Start with the words given and find the endings in the text.

The microchip is a small electronic component. It is an important part of today's computers and televisions.

The microchip is a small electronic component which is an important part of today's computers and televisions.

- 1 Penicillin is a substance. It kills bacteria.  
Penicillin is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 DNA is a molecule. It forms the basis of life.  
DNA is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Sir Tim Berners-Lee is a British computer scientist. He invented the World Wide Web.  
Sir Tim Berners-Lee is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The World Wide Web is a computer system. It is part of the Internet.  
The World Wide Web is \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Read the article again. Complete the sentences.

Scientists came from all over the world to work at CERN.

- 1 Sir Tim Berners-Lee wrote some special programs  
\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 He wrote a computer language called HTML \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Today people use the Web \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 Focus on you Why do you do these things? Underline the most important reasons.

#### I go to school

- a to study                      b to meet friends                      c to see the teachers

#### I use the Internet

- a to do homework                      b to chat                      c to send e-mails

#### I watch TV

- a to relax                      b to get the news                      c to learn new things

#### I meet friends

- a to play sport                      b to chat                      c to listen to music

#### I save money

- a to buy sweets                      b to buy clothes                      c to buy presents

### 6 Pairwork Discuss your answers to exercise 5.

- A I go to school to study.  
B So do I. / Really? I go to school to meet my friends.

## Human achievement

1  Label the people with the words in the box. Then listen and repeat.

architect artist composer explorer ~~inventor~~ politician scientist writer

1 inventor



2 Match the people with the verbs.

- |              |                      |
|--------------|----------------------|
| 1 inventor   | a travel / explore   |
| 2 scientist  | b negotiate / debate |
| 3 artist     | c write              |
| 4 composer   | d invent             |
| 5 explorer   | e paint / draw       |
| 6 writer     | f discover           |
| 7 architect  | g compose music      |
| 8 politician | h build / design     |

3 Match the famous people to their professions and achievements. Then write two sentences about each person.

Shakespeare	explorer	first U.S. President
Marie Curie	politician	<i>Guernica</i> (1937)
Christopher Columbus	artist	the theory of radioactivity
George Washington	writer	<i>Romeo and Juliet</i>
Picasso	scientist	the Americas

Shakespeare was a famous writer. He wrote "Romeo and Juliet".

4 **Pairwork** Think of a famous person for each category in exercise 1. Find out if your partner knows why they are famous. 

- A Who was Beethoven?  
B He was a German composer.

## Relative pronouns: *who* / *which* / *that*

### People

The book is about a boy. He makes friends with a dog.

The book is about boy *who* / *that* makes friends with a dog.

### Things

Stephenie Meyer writes books. The books are very exciting.

Stephenie Meyer writes books *which* / *that* are very exciting.

### Think!

Read the sentences. Then complete the rules with *who* and *which*.

Marie Curie was the scientist *who* discovered radium.

Radium is an element *which* is radioactive.

- The relative pronoun <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ refers to people.
- The relative pronoun <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ refers to animals or things.

Rules p.W44

### 1 Circle the correct answers.



Gustave Eiffel was the man who / that designed the Eiffel Tower.

- 1 Isaac Newton was the man *who* / *which* described the law of gravity.
- 2 Penicillin is a drug *which* / *who* kills bacteria.
- 3 A composer is a person *who* / *which* writes music.
- 4 The airplane was an invention *who* / *which* changed the world.
- 5 Marconi was the person *which* / *who* invented the radio.
- 6 The Internet is a network *who* / *which* connects computers.

### 2 Complete the definitions with *who* or *which* and a phrase from the box.

~~contains genetic code~~    ~~created the miniskirt~~  
~~debate and create laws~~    discovered penicillin  
 created Mickey Mouse    stores and plays music files

Politicians are people who debate and make laws.

- 1 Walt Disney is the man \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 DNA is the molecule \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Alexander Fleming is the person \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 An MP3 player is an electronic device \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Mary Quant is the fashion designer \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Join the sentences together. Rewrite them with *who*, *which*, or *that*.

Charlie Chaplin was an actor. He appeared in silent movies.

Charlie Chaplin was an actor who appeared in silent movies.

- 1 Michelangelo was an artist. He lived in the Renaissance period.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 An oven is an electronic device. It cooks food.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Magellan was an explorer. He came from Portugal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 A dishwasher is a machine. It cleans plates.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 This is the book. My sister read it last year.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Game! Take turns to describe the people or things in the box. Guess who or what your partner is describing.

~~an airplane~~    a dog    a DVD player    an iron  
 a love story    a salesclerk    a shoplifter  
 a student    a teacher    a vandal

- A It is a machine that flies in the sky. You can sit in it and travel to other countries.  
 B An airplane!

### Finished?

Write five more definitions for people and things.  
*A doctor is a person who works in a hospital.*  
*A novel is a book which tells a story.*

## Discussing what things are for

1  Match the dialogues with the pictures. Then listen and repeat.

a



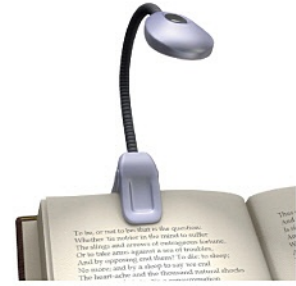
- 1 A What's this gadget?  
 B It's a book light.  
 A What's it for?  
 B It's for reading in the dark.  
 You attach it to a book and you use it to read in bed or in the car.

b



- 2 A What's this?  
 B It's an external hard drive.  
 A What's it for?  
 B It's for storing information from your computer. You use it to keep back-up copies of your computer files.

c



- 3 A What are these?  
 B They're aqua globes.  
 A What are they for?  
 B They're for watering your plants. You put water in them and then you put them in your plant pots.

### You hear

### You answer

What's this / are these?	It's a / an ... / They're ...
What's it for?	It's for (reading). / They're for (watering your plants).
What are they for?	You use it / them to (read / water your plants).

2  **Pronunciation** Listen to the pronunciation of the sound /ð/. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 this                      4 then  
 2 these                    5 them  
 3 they

3  Listen to three conversations. Complete the notes about the gadgets.

- 1 A waterproof \_\_\_\_\_ Use: for \_\_\_\_\_ in the shower!  
 2 A speaker \_\_\_\_\_ Use: for \_\_\_\_\_ calls in the car.  
 3 An MP3 \_\_\_\_\_ Use: for \_\_\_\_\_ and listening to music.

4 **Pairwork** Ask and answer questions about these gadgets. 



### Exercise bean

Use: exercise - keep fit and work out at home!



### Talking bone

Use: keep your dog happy – record your voice and talk to your dog!



### Jumbo Remote Control

Use: control your TV and other electronic devices – controls all your electronic devices!



### Digital recorder

Use: record your voice and conversations – no need to take notes in class!



## The infinitive of purpose

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then check (✓) the correct answers.

He went to London **to study English**.

I surfed the Internet **to find information about New York**.

- What is the function of the **bold** phrases?
  - to describe an event
  - to describe a reason or purpose
- What form does the verb in the phrases take?
  - the infinitive with **to**
  - the infinitive without **to**

Rules p.W44

### 1 Match the sentence halves.

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 She went into the store  | a to report a crime.             |
| 2 Marcus called Maria      | b to celebrate Larry's birthday. |
| 3 I went to the library    | c to buy a newspaper.            |
| 4 Thomas called the police | d to check her e-mails.          |
| 5 We bought some cake      | e to borrow a book.              |
| 6 Valeria went online      | f to invite her to the theater.  |

### 2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



She got a pen **to write a letter**.



1 He went to the sports center \_\_\_\_\_.



2 Arthur cut some bread \_\_\_\_\_.



3 They went into the store \_\_\_\_\_.



4 Yuki went to her bedroom \_\_\_\_\_.



5 Vitor got his MP3 player \_\_\_\_\_.

## Which one ...? / Which ones ...?

### Singular

- A These T-shirts are cool!  
 B **Which one** do you like best?  
 A I like the **blue one**.

### Plural

- A Help me choose some shoes. **Which ones** do you prefer?  
 B I prefer the brown **ones**.

### Think!

- Read the sentences. Then choose the correct alternative.

I like the blue T-shirt. I don't like the red **one**.  
 These DVDs are great. Those **ones** are boring.

- You can use <sup>1</sup>**one / ones** to avoid repeating <sup>2</sup>**an adjective / a countable noun**.

Rules p.W45

### 3 Rewrite the sentences. Use **one** or **ones**.

Which T-shirt is more expensive? The red T-shirt or the blue T-shirt?

**Which T-shirt is more expensive? The red one or the blue one?**

- There are some CDs on the table. Which CDs are yours?
- Which sandwich do you want? The sandwich with cheese or the sandwich with chicken?
- A Look at these cell phones. Which phone do you prefer?  
 B I prefer the black phone. It's smaller.
- A Which shoes do you like? The red shoes or the brown shoes?  
 B I like the brown shoes.
- A Which of those boys is your brother?  
 B The tallest boy.
- Those DVDs aren't as good as these DVDs.

### Finished?

Look for three examples of these things in your book. Say which one you prefer.

animals boys cities gadgets girls

There are photos of cities on pages 28, 48, and 63. I prefer the one on page 63.

# THE GENIUS WHO INVENTED TELEVISION

John Logie Baird was a Scottish engineer and inventor. He was born on August 14<sup>th</sup>, 1888. During his life Baird invented a lot of different things, but he is famous because he was the man who invented one of the most popular electronic devices in the world - the television.

As a child Baird was very interested in electricity and technology. As a teenager, he changed the lights in his family's house from gas lamps to electric lights! He also created a small phone network which connected his bedroom with his friends' bedrooms in houses across the street!

After World War I, Baird moved to England to start work on the development of television. A lot of scientists were doing similar work, but in October 1925 Baird was the first person to produce and transmit a television image that moved. He also invented the first working television and demonstrated his television to 50 scientists in London on January 26<sup>th</sup> 1926. A year later he formed the Baird Television Development Company Ltd. (BTDC). The BTDC was the company which transmitted the first transatlantic television signal from London to New York.

John Logie Baird died on June 14<sup>th</sup> 1946, but his invention lives on. Today television is a form of entertainment which is popular all over the world. People watch TV in their free time to relax and to learn about the world.



## Reading


### 1 Read the text quickly. Answer the question.

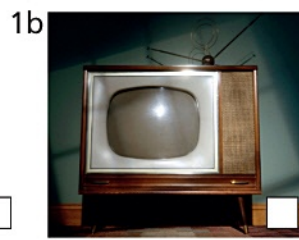
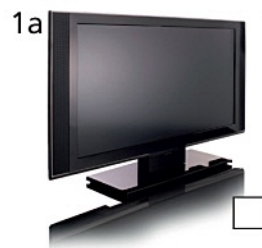
- 1 What was John Logie Baird's most important achievement?

### 2 Answer the questions.


- 1 What nationality was John Logie Baird?
- 2 When was he born?
- 3 What was he interested in as a child?
- 4 Why did he move to England after World War I?
- 5 When did he give the first demonstration of his television?
- 6 Where did his demonstration of television happen?
- 7 Why was John Logie Baird's company important?
- 8 When did John Logie Baird die?

## Listening

3  Ruth and Chris are discussing the objects below. Which ones do they prefer? Listen and write *R* (Ruth) or *C* (Chris) next to each object.



## Speaking

4 **Pairwork** Look at the objects in exercise 3 again. Discuss which ones you prefer. 

A What do you think of the TVs? Which one do you prefer?

B I like the modern one best, of course! It has ... .

A I prefer that one, too. The other one is ... . / Really? I prefer the old-fashioned one. It has ... .

## Writing

5 Read the factfile about Alexander Graham Bell. Then complete the text.

Alexander Graham Bell was a Scottish scientist and <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. He was born on <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Bell is famous because he was one of the people <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ telephone. He created his version of the telephone in <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. He died on <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Today the <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ is one of the most common electronic devices in the world. People use them for business and to stay in contact with their family and friends.

### Alexander Graham Bell

Nationality: Scottish

Occupation: scientist and inventor

Born: March 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1847

Died: August 2<sup>nd</sup>, 1922

Inventions: 1875 - the telephone

6 Write a paragraph about one of the people in the factfiles below. Say:

- who he is / was and where he was born
- why he is famous and what he invented
- how popular the invention is today
- what people use it for
- if you have one and how important it is to your life

### László Bíró

Nationality: Hungarian  
Occupation: journalist and inventor  
Born: September 29<sup>th</sup>, 1899  
Died: October 24<sup>th</sup>, 1985  
Invention: 1931 - the ball point pen (biro)

### Martin Cooper

Nationality: American  
Occupation: engineer and inventor  
Born: December 26<sup>th</sup>, 1928  
Invention: 1973 - the cell phone



## Vocabulary

1 Complete the newspaper article with the words in the box.

kidnapped kidnapers mugged muggers  
~~murder~~ murderer pickpockets robbed  
 robbers shoplifters stole thief  
 vandals vandalized

Police have started a murder inquiry after the death of William Travis. They believe that Mr. Travis knew his <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Two men <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the City bank yesterday. The <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ escaped with \$40,000.

On Friday two men <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ an old woman's dog. The <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ want \$1000,000 for its safe return.

A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ broke into the Webber Art Gallery on Friday night and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ five paintings.

Two teenagers <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Ellen Clover at the bus stop in West Street yesterday. The <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ escaped with her purse.

Some boys <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a park play area in the city last night. The <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sprayed graffiti and destroyed the park benches.

Angry store owners in Langley Mall have put security cameras in their stores to help catch <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Security guards at the mall also advise customers to watch out for <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Answer the questions.

## WHAT DO YOU CALL A PERSON WHO ...?

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 writes music  | a <u>composer</u> |
| 2 paints and draws pictures                           | an a _____        |
| 3 writes novels and plays                             | a w _____         |
| 4 travels through unknown territories                 | an e _____        |
| 5 debates and votes on new laws                       | a p _____         |
| 6 creates new machines                                | an i _____        |
| 7 designs buildings                                   | an a _____        |
| 8 studies the natural world and makes new discoveries | a s _____         |

## Grammar

3 Complete the dialogues with the past progressive form of the verbs and short answers.

a  
 Police What were you doing (you / do) at 8 a.m. yesterday?

Suspect 1 I was at home. My wife <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) breakfast and my children <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) ready for school. I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (watch TV).

b  
 Police <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / stand) outside the bank at 8 a.m.?

Suspect 2 Yes, I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / wait) for the bank to open. I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for the bus.

c  
 Police <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / sit) in a car near the bank at 8 a.m.?

Suspect 3 No, I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_! I was with two friends. We <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to work.

4 Complete the dialogue with the past progressive or the simple past of the verbs.

A I saw (see) something very exciting yesterday.

B What <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / see)?

A Well I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework when I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a noise. I went to the window and I saw two men. They <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the Liptons' back yard!

B What <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (they do) when you <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) them?

A They <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to open a window!

B Really? What happened then?

A While they <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (open) the window, the house alarm <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (start) to ring and they ran away! I called the police, but while I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (report) the crime a police car <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive). The thieves <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (run) down the street when the police <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) them!

**5 Rewrite the sentences with *who* or *which*.**

Gemma is the girl that won the competition.

Gemma is the girl who won the competition.

- 1 The man that answered the phone was my dad.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Marconi is the man that invented the radio.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A sushi bar is a restaurant that serves Japanese food.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The salesclerk that served us was very nice.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The red car that is in front of the house is my mom's.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 *Up* is a movie that was popular in 2009.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**6 Combine the sentences. Use *who* or *which* / *that*.**

Magellan was an explorer. He traveled to the Americas.

Magellan was an explorer who traveled to the Americas.

- 1 *Ring of Life* is a book about an old ring. The ring has magical powers.
- 2 Andy Warhol was an American painter. He was an important pop artist.
- 3 *Alien Attack* is a movie about an alien space ship. It attacks planet Earth.
- 4 J.K. Rowling is a writer. She is famous for writing the Harry Potter books.

**7 Choose the correct answers.**

You use a bottle-opener **for / to** open bottles.

- 1 A USB pen is **for / to** storing information from your computer.
- 2 He went into the store **for to / to** buy some bread.
- 3 "Which of those girls is your sister?"  
"The **one / ones** with red hair."
- 4 I called Jack **for / to** say Happy Birthday.
- 5 Those clothes are less expensive than these **one / ones**.
- 6 Which **one / ones** do you prefer? The red top or the blue top?
- 7 He went to the library **to / for** find a book.

**Got it?**

**8 Complete the text with the simple past or the past progressive form of the verbs and choose the correct relative pronouns.**

Daisy Richardson, is a 15-year-old girl **who** / **which** survived when a car crashed into her bedroom.



Daisy **was sleeping** (sleep) when the car  
1 \_\_\_\_\_

(crash) through her bedroom wall. The car  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ (push) a wardrobe onto

her bed **who** / **which** saved her! The police arrested the man **who** / **which** caused the

accident, 23-year-old Jason Edwards.

Mr. Edwards **was driving** (driving) home when the accident **happened** (happen).

"It **was raining** (rain) and I **lost** (lose) control of the

car. Luckily I **wasn't driving** (not drive) very fast," he said. The police, however, think

that Mr. Edwards **was using** (use) his cell phone at the time of the accident and that

he **wasn't concentrating** (not concentrate) on the road. They believe he tried to stop suddenly

at a traffic light **which** / **who** is outside the Richardsons' house and lost control. They would

like anyone **who** / **which** saw the accident to contact them **for** / **to** help them with their

inquiries.

**9 Answer the questions.**

- 1 What was Daisy doing when the car crashed into her house?
- 2 Who is Jason Edwards?
- 3 What does Mr. Edwards think happened?
- 4 What do the police think Mr. Edwards was doing at the time of the accident?
- 5 How do the police think that Mr. Edwards lost control?
- 6 What must people who saw the accident do?

# ORDINARY PEOPLE, EXTRAORDINARY ACTIONS

## CNN Heroes

In 2007 the American TV channel CNN created a special competition to honor ordinary people who do extraordinary things to help others. They asked people to nominate and vote for their local heroes. In the first year CNN received more than 7,000 nominations from people in over 80 different countries. Today the competition is an annual event. Here are two of the recent winners.

### Wesley Autrey

Wesley Autrey was waiting for a train in a New York subway station when a young man fell onto the train tracks. Autrey immediately jumped onto the tracks to help him. He was trying to move the man when he heard a train coming. Autrey lay on top of the young man to protect him between the train tracks. Amazingly, the train passed over them and both men survived.



### Derrick Tabb

Derrick Tabb works hard to keep young people away from crime in New Orleans, the city which has the highest murder rate in the U.S. He runs a program called *The Roots of Music* which offers free music lessons to more than 100 students between the ages of nine and fourteen. The students meet from 4 p.m.–7 p.m. every weekday. They practice their music, do their homework, and have a hot meal before they go home.

*The Roots of Music* is a very popular program and more than 400 young people are waiting to join. Every day the students learn something new, so they want to come back every day. One of the young musicians says "Before, I was always in trouble. Now, when I come here, I'm learning how to play the drums, be disciplined, and work hard".

The students work hard on the program, but interestingly they also work harder in school – 85% of the children who take part in the program have better grades in class. Derrick Tabb believes that music can give children a better future and it seems that his program is working.



## 1 Before you read Read the text quickly. Check (✓) the correct ending to the sentence.

The article is about people ...

- a who have an extraordinary talent
- b who helped other people in extraordinary ways
- c who have extraordinary lives

## 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 When did CNN create a special competition?
- 2 Why did CNN create the competition?
- 3 What happened while Wesley Autrey was waiting for a train?
- 4 What did Wesley Autrey do?
- 5 How does Derrick Tabb try to keep young people away from crime?
- 6 How often do the students meet and what do they do?
- 7 Is *The Roots of Music* program popular?
- 8 How does the program help some young people in other areas of their lives?

## 3 Focus on you Write about a person you know who does a lot to help others. Include the following information ...

- who he / she is
- why he / she is a hero
- what he / she does to help others

## Speaking and writing

**1** I can identify different types of crime.

B1

kidnap someone

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**2** I can ask and answer questions about my favorite detective stories.

B1

I like detective stories.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**3** I can describe my favorite detective from a book, a movie, or a TV series.

B1

My favorite detective is Hercule Poirot.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**4** I can identify different occupations.

B1

architect

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**5** I can write about famous people and their achievements.

B1

Gustave Eiffel was the man who designed the Eiffel Tower.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

**6** I can write a factfile about a famous inventor.

B1

Albert Einstein was born in Germany.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Got it? \_\_\_ / 5

## Reading, listening, and writing

**7** I can read an article about street crime.

B1

Got it?

	Yes	I'm not sure	No
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**8** I can read and understand a story about Sherlock Holmes.

B1

	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

**9** I can read and understand articles about different inventors.

B1

	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

**10** I can read and understand an article about an extraordinary person.

B1

	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

1 Chemicals in everyday life

Everyone has to wash their clothes, wash the dishes, and clean the bath. Most of us use cleaning products with alkalis or acids in them to do these chores. But do we know what alkalis and acids are or how they work?

## 2 \_\_\_\_\_

5 Alkalis are chemicals and they are everywhere: in soap, dishwasher tablets, and washing powder. But how do they clean our dirty clothes and plates? Alkalis have two parts: one part loves water, the other part loves dirt. The two parts react in water and the water particles get bigger. This produces a new liquid called an emulsion. The emulsion attracts the dirt from your clothes or dishes. So when you

10 load the washing machine and switch it on, the detergent causes that reaction and you get clean clothes. However, you don't have to mix an alkali in water to clean dirt. Oven cleaners, for example, contain a very strong alkali called sodium hydroxide. This reacts with the dirt in the oven and dissolves it.

## 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Acids are also chemicals and they contain the gas hydrogen. There are

15 different kinds of acids. Fruits contain citric acid, vinegar is an acid, fizzy drinks are also acids. Some household cleaning products use a mixture of a strong acid and water. Toilet cleaners contain strong acids, but they have to be mixed with water. This mixture of acid and water kills germs.

## 4 \_\_\_\_\_

20 Acids often sting when you touch them and they react strongly when they combine with metal. Acids are dangerous and they can burn you. You must read the label on a product carefully before you use it. When you clean

25 something with an acid, you must wear gloves. If acid touches your skin, you must wash it off immediately.

## 5 \_\_\_\_\_

No one likes damaging the environment. Cleaning products with chemicals damage the environment and they are also bad for everyone's health. Nowadays many people prefer

30 using environmentally-friendly products with plant-based ingredients to clean their house or more natural products like lemon juice and vinegar. Some people mix a cooking powder called bicarbonate of soda with water. This

35 makes a paste and it cleans very well.

## Useful language

particle (n) *line 8*  
 reaction (n) *line 10*  
 dissolve (v) *line 13*  
 germ (n) *line 19*  
 paste (n) *line 35*

**Did you know?**

Bee stings are acid. Don't use lemon juice! Use an alkali, for example bicarbonate of soda!  
 Wasp stings are alkaline. Use an acid, for example lemon juice!



wasp



bee

**1 Read the text quickly. Then answer the question.**

- 1 Which household cleaning products are mentioned in the text?

**2 Read the text again. Match the headings with the paragraphs.**

- A Chemicals in everyday life
- B Dangerous chemicals
- C Different kinds of acids
- D How do chemicals clean things?
- E Protecting the environment

**3 Answer the questions.**

What is an alkali?

An alkali is a chemical. It reacts in water and cleans things.

- 1 What is a mixture of an alkali and water called?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 What kind of acid is there in fruit?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Why do you have to wear gloves if you use an acid?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 What is a natural cleaning product?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 What can you use if a wasp stings you?

\_\_\_\_\_

**4 Complete the sentences with information from the text.**

Soap, dishwasher tablets, and washing powder are alkalis.

- 1 An alkali reacts with water and \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 The new liquid \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Toilet cleaners must \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 When you use an acid, you \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 You can mix water with bicarbonate of soda \_\_\_\_\_

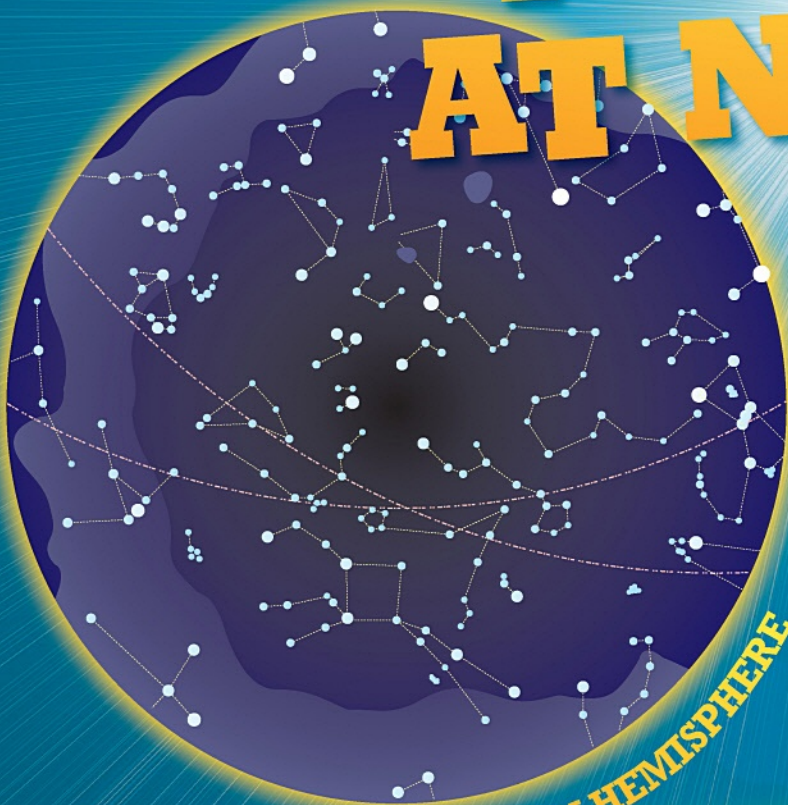
\_\_\_\_\_

**Project**

**Think about household cleaning products you use. Find out what is in them and write a science report. Think about the following:**

- What do you use them for?
- Are they acids or alkalis?
- How do they work?

# THE SKY AT NIGHT



THE NORTHERN HEMISPHERE



THE SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE

If you look at the sky on a clear night, you'll be able to see about 2,000 stars. If you want to see more stars, you'll have to use a telescope. The stars you see are actually suns and they look so small because they are so far away. The Earth and the Sun are part of an enormous family group that contains millions of stars. This family group is called a galaxy. There are billions of galaxies in the Universe and our galaxy is called the Milky Way. The Milky Way is bigger than other galaxies in the Universe and astronomers think that there are about 100,000 million stars in the Milky Way.

Each galaxy has different constellations.

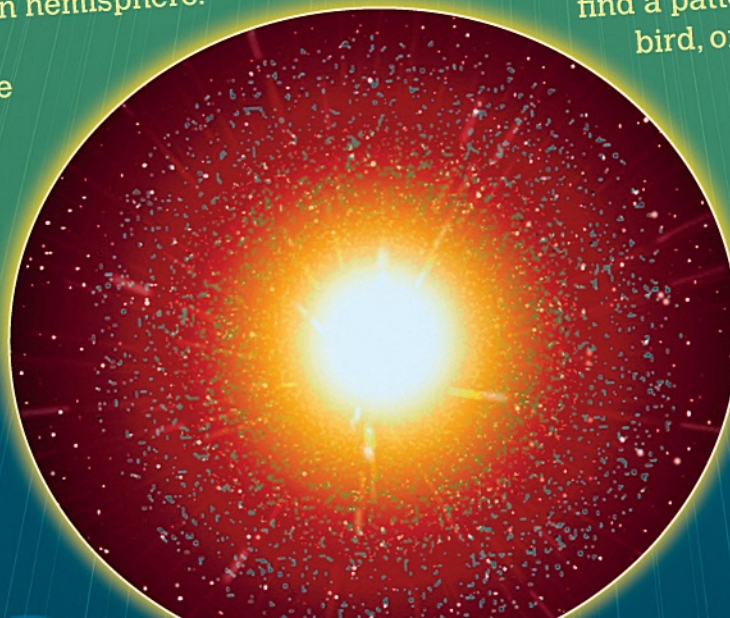
A constellation is a pattern of stars. There are 88 constellations in the sky and astronomers use star maps to find them. If you live in the northern hemisphere, you will see different constellations from people in the southern hemisphere.

In each constellation, there are stars of different ages, sizes, color, and temperature. New stars are very bright and hot, 36,000°F and they look

blue or sometimes white. Older stars are cooler, 7,500°F and they don't shine as brightly. They look orange or red. The biggest stars are red, but they are the coolest temperature, 5,500°F. The biggest stars in the galaxy are called supergiant stars, but they only live for a few million years. Smaller stars are called dwarf stars and they live longer than supergiant stars. When supergiant stars die, they explode. The explosion is called a supernova.

Different cultures see different patterns in the stars like kings, birds, bears, horses and the signs of the zodiac. One big constellation is called the Great Bear and seven stars in this form the Big Dipper. In ancient Mayan culture, they saw the Big Dipper as a parrot. The ancient Chinese saw a special chariot for a king.

So next time you look at the stars try and find a pattern: is it an animal, is it a bird, or could it be your star sign?



## Useful language

pattern (n) line 14  
hemisphere (n) line 17  
explode (v) line 33  
explosion (n) line 33  
chariot (n) line 39

**1 Read the text quickly. Then answer the question.**

1 Which galaxy do we live in?

**2 Read the text again. Match the questions and answers.**

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 How many stars will you see on a clear night? | a 7                   |
| 2 How many stars are there in the Milky Way?    | b 88                  |
| 3 How many constellations are there in the sky? | c 2000                |
| 4 How hot are new stars?                        | d 36,000°F            |
| 5 How long do the biggest stars live for?       | e A few million years |
| 6 How many stars are there in the Big Dipper?   | f 100,000 million     |

**3 Complete the table with information about the stars.**

Star	Temperature	Color
new	36,000°F	1 _____
old	2 _____	3 _____
supergiant	4 _____	5 _____

**4 Answer the questions.**

What are stars?

Stars are suns.

1 What are galaxies?

\_\_\_\_\_

2 What color are the hottest stars?

\_\_\_\_\_

3 What is the name of the biggest stars in a galaxy?

\_\_\_\_\_

4 What is a supernova?

\_\_\_\_\_

5 What constellation does the Big Dipper belong to?

\_\_\_\_\_

6 What did the ancient Mayans see in the Big Dipper?

\_\_\_\_\_

### Project

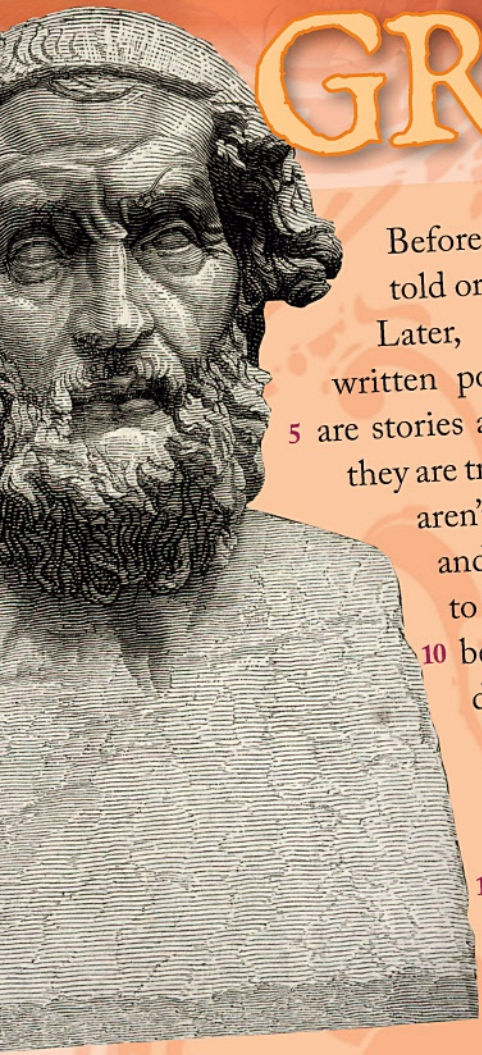
**Write about your star sign constellation. Think about the following:**

- What is your star sign?
- What does your star sign constellation look like?
- What other stars are near your stars?





# THE GREEK MYTHS



Before people could write they told or sang stories and poems. Later, these stories became written poems or stories. Myths are stories and people often believe they are true, but usually the events aren't real. They are symbolic and they are a way of trying to explain the world. Myths began a long time ago and different cultures and countries have different myths. Some of the most famous myths have come from Greece.

Homer, a famous Greek writer, wrote two poems called *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*. The poems are based on Greek myth. They are two of the oldest pieces of western literature and they have existed since the 8<sup>th</sup> century B.C.

*The Iliad* describes a short period of time in the last year of the Trojan War. King Agamemnon is the King of the Greeks. He is fighting a war with the Trojans. It has been a difficult war and it has continued for ten years. The story tells us

how Odysseus, a Greek soldier, has tricked the Trojans. He has brought a huge wooden horse to the city of Troy and has left it in front of the city gates. The Trojans think that the horse is a present and take it into the city. Greek soldiers have hidden inside the horse and at night, the soldiers get out of the horse and open the city gates. The rest of the Greek army then enters the city of Troy and destroys it. The Greeks win the battle and Odysseus must now return home to the city of Ithaca.

After *The Iliad*, Homer wrote a sequel called *The Odyssey*. This poem begins at the end of the Trojan War and describes how Odysseus, the Greek hero, travels home. The Trojan War lasted ten years, but Odysseus has to travel for another ten years to reach home. On his way home, he faces many dangers. He meets a monster called a Cyclops and he has to travel through a dangerous storm. Odysseus has been away for almost twenty years and his wife and family think he is dead, but Odysseus survives the different dangers on his journey home. When he finally arrives in Ithaca he is reunited with his family and he becomes a great hero.

### Useful language

fight (v) line 25  
war (n) line 25  
trick (v) line 29  
sequel (n) line 39  
journey (n) line 50

**1 Read the text quickly. Then answer the question.**

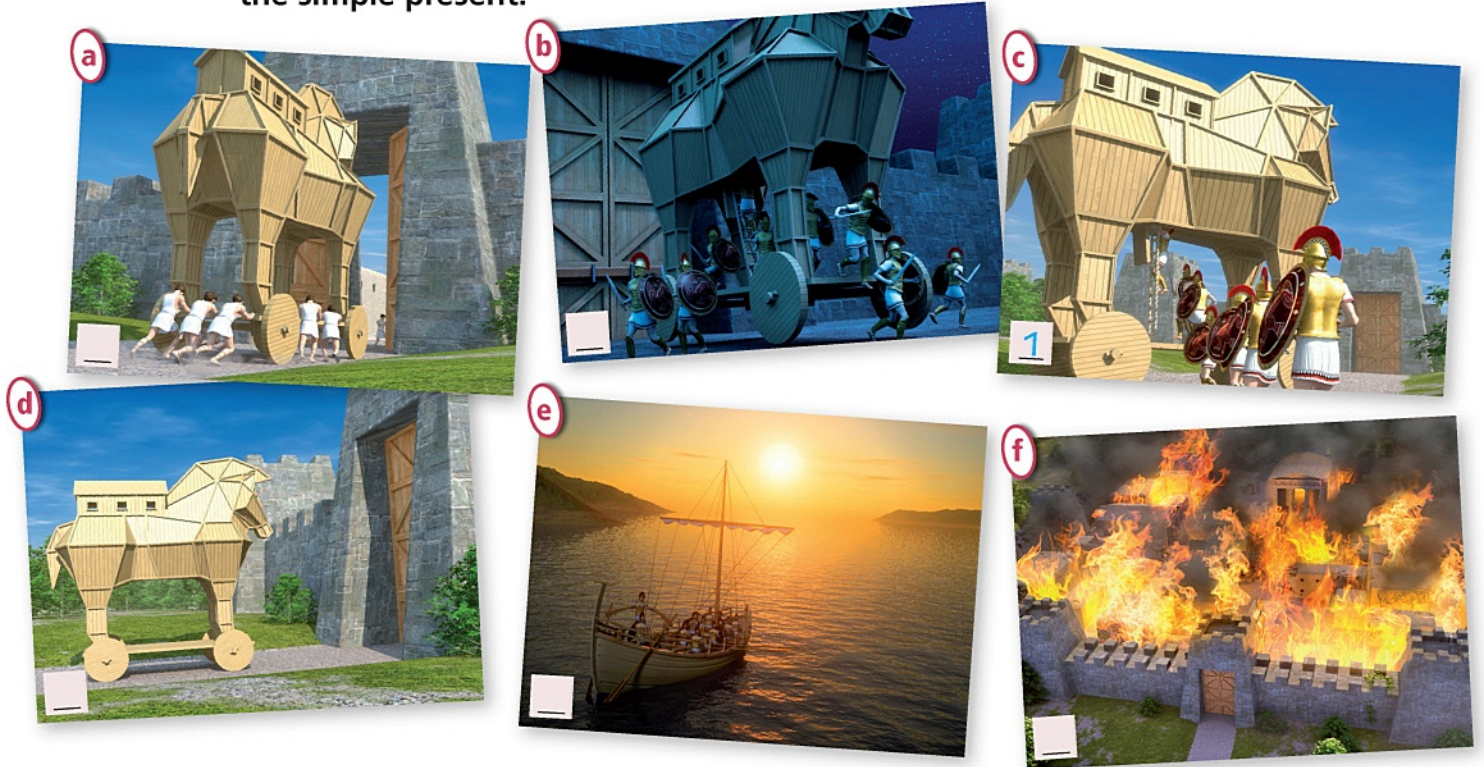
1 Who wrote *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*?

**2 Read the text again. Are the sentences true or false?**

Myths are true stories. **False**

- 1 King Agamemnon is from Troy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Homer wrote *The Odyssey* before *The Iliad*. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Odysseus is a Trojan soldier. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The horse the Greeks hide in is made of wood. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Odysseus has been away from his home for twenty years. \_\_\_\_\_

**3 Put the pictures from *The Iliad* in the correct order. Then write sentences using the simple present.**



- 1 Greek soldiers / hide / horse  
The Greek soldiers hide inside the wooden horse.
- 2 Greek soldiers / leave / horse / city gates  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Trojans / take / horse / city  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Greek soldiers / get out of / horse  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Greek soldiers / destroy / Troy  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Odysseus and his men / return / Ithaca  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Project**

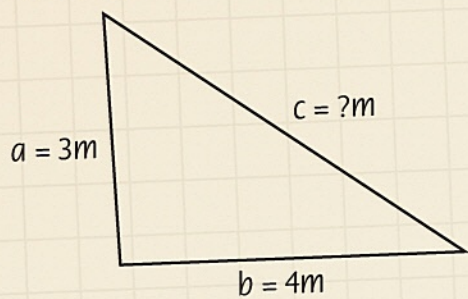
**Find out about a myth in your country. Think about the following:**

- Who are the main characters?
- Where does it take place?
- What happens?

# Math around us

Math theories are everywhere and mathematicians are always trying to solve problems. Pythagoras was a Greek mathematician who lived more than 2000 years ago. Math students today still use his theorem in geometry.

- 5 His theorem proves that in a right-angled triangle, the sum of the squares of the shorter sides equals the square of the longest side, or the hypotenuse. The equation to work this out is simple:  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

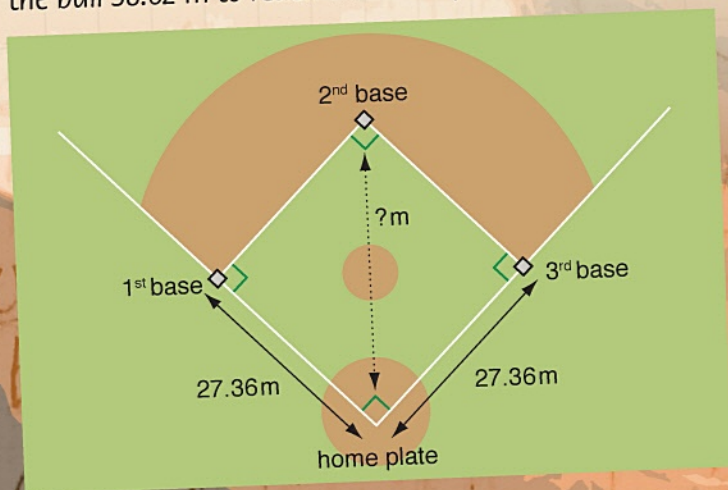


So, to calculate the length of c:

10  $3^2 + 4^2 = c^2$   
 $9 + 16 = c^2$   
 $25 = c^2$   
 $\sqrt{25} = 5$ , so  $c = 5m$

- 15 The Pythagorean theorem is used in many different ways in everyday life. For example, you can use the Pythagorean theorem in a baseball match. You can calculate how far the second baseman has to throw the ball to get the runner out before he reaches the home plate:

20  $27.36^2 + 27.36^2 = c^2$   
 $745.8336 + 745.8336 = c^2$   
 $1491.6672 = c^2$   
 $\sqrt{1491.6672} = 38.62$ , so the second baseman has to throw the ball 38.62 m to reach the home plate.



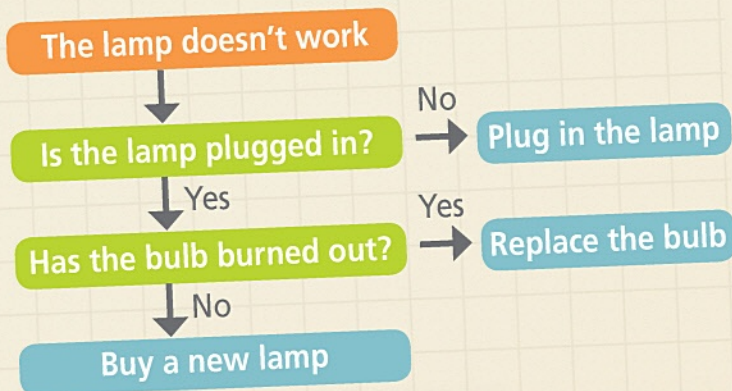
- 25 We also use algorithms every day in different areas of our lives. An algorithm is a list of instructions or rules that must be followed to solve a problem. An algorithm requires four things: data (what you want to do), a process (how you want to do it), a result, and any other information you need to do the task.

There are three different kinds of algorithms:

- ones we learn, for example arithmetic
- ones we work out for ourselves, for example finding a friend's phone number
- 35 • ones which require written instructions, for example reading directions or following a recipe.

We use arithmetic algorithms to solve a Sudoku puzzle. An example of an everyday algorithm which you work out for yourself is changing a light bulb. An algorithm for

- 40 changing a light bulb could look like this:



- 45 Written algorithms with special codes are used in computer programs. The codes are used because computers can't think and the instructions must be very clear.

### Useful language

- prove (v) line 5
- sum (n) line 6
- runner (n) line 18
- home plate (n) line 19
- light bulb (n) line 40
- plug in (v) line 42
- burn out (v) line 43

**1 Read the text quickly. Then answer the question.**

1 What two mathematical areas does the text mention?

**2 Read the text. Write P (Pythagoras) or A (Algorithm).**

He lived more than 2,000 years ago. P

- 1 One angle must measure  $90^\circ$ .
- 2 You can use it to solve a sudoku puzzle.
- 3 Computers use these with special codes.
- 4 You can use it in a baseball game.
- 5 You can use it when following a recipe.

**3 Read the text again. Answer the questions.**

What is the name of the longest side of a triangle?

It is called the hypotenuse.

1 What is the main idea in the Pythagorean theorem?

2 What is an algorithm?

3 How many things do you need to make an algorithm and what are they?

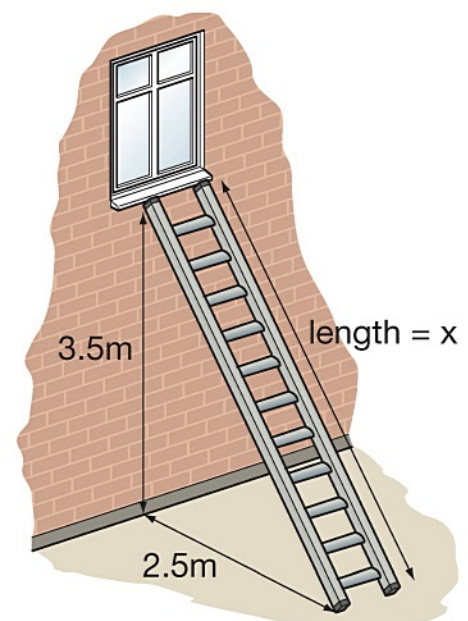
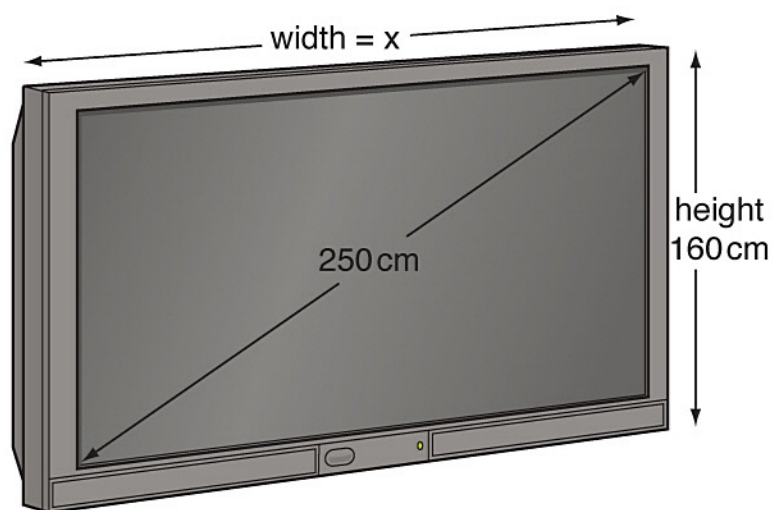
4 What are the three different types of algorithms?

5 Which type of algorithm do you use to solve a Sudoku?

**4 Work out these problems. Use the Pythagorean theorem.**

1 What is the width of the TV?

2 How long is the ladder?



**5 Write an algorithm for sending a text message to a friend.**

**6 Write an algorithm for giving directions from your house to your school.**

### Project

**How do you use math in everyday life. Think about the following:**

- When do you use geometry? Give an example.
- When do you use algorithms? Write an algorithm for something you do every day.

# Word list

## Unit 1

### Places around town

bank /bæŋk/  
 bus station /'bʌs ,steɪʃn/  
 bus stop /'bʌs stɒp/  
 café /kæ'feɪ/  
 church /tʃɜːtʃ/  
 hospital /'hɒspɪtl/  
 library /'laɪbrəri/  
 park /pɑːk/  
 parking lot /'pɑːkɪŋ ,lɒt/  
 police station /pə'liːs ,steɪʃn/  
 post office /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/  
 shopping mall /'ʃɑːpɪŋ mɒl/  
 sports center /,spɔːrts 'sentər/

### Other nouns

adult /ə'dʌlt/  
 campground /'kæmpgraʊnd/  
 directions /dɪ'rekʃnz/  
 file /faɪl/s  
 fire /'faɪər/  
 ghost town /'gəʊst taʊn/  
 gold /gəʊld/  
 gold rush /'gəʊld rʌʃ/  
 guideline /'gaɪdlaɪn/  
 hand signal /hænd 'sɪgnəl/  
 helmet /'helmət/  
 ingredient /ɪn'grɪdiənt/  
 mine /maɪn/  
 mistake /mɪ'steɪk/  
 official /ə'fɪʃl/  
 parking ticket /'pɑːkɪŋ ,tɪkɪt/  
 password /'pɑːswɜːd/  
 pedestrian /pə'destriən/  
 picnic area /'pɪknɪk ,eɪrɪə/  
 pie /paɪ/  
 reception /rɪ'seɪpʃn/  
 roundabout /'raʊndəbaʊt/  
 rule /ruːl/  
 saloon /sə'lun/  
 silver /'sɪlvər/  
 ticket /'tɪkɪt/  
 traffic light /træfɪk laɪts/  
 truth /truːθ/  
 turning /'tɜːnɪŋ/  
 virus /'vaɪrəs/  
 website /'websaɪt/

### Verbs

contain /kən'teɪn/  
 control /kən'trəʊl/  
 copy /'kɒpi/  
 damage /'dæmɪdʒ/  
 discover /dɪs'kʌvər/  
 download /'daʊnləʊd/  
 enter /'entər/  
 share /ʃeər/  
 store /stɔːr/

### Adjectives

absent /'æbsənt/  
 historic /hɪ'stɔːrɪk/  
 luxury /'lʌkʃəri/  
 major /'meɪdʒər/  
 online /ɒn'laɪn/  
 personal /'pɜːsnəl/  
 private /'praɪvət/  
 public /'pʌblɪk/  
 secret /'sɪkrət/

## Unit 2

### Housework

clean my room /kliːn maɪ 'ruːm/  
 clean the bathroom /kliːn ðə 'bæθrʊm/  
 do the cooking /du ðə 'kʊkɪŋ/  
 do the dusting /du ðə 'dʌstɪŋ/  
 do the ironing /du ðə 'aɪərnɪŋ/  
 do the grocery shopping /du ðə 'ɡrəʊsərɪ ,ʃɑːpɪŋ/

do the washing /du ðə 'wɑːʃɪŋ/  
 lay / clear the table /leɪ ,kliːr ðə 'teɪbl/  
 load / unload the dishwasher /ləʊd ,  
 ,ʌn'ləʊd ðə 'dɪʃwɑːʃər/  
 make my bed /,meɪk maɪ 'bed/  
 take out the trash /teɪk aʊt ðə træʃ/  
 wash the dishes /wɑːʃ ðə dɪʃɪz/

### Other nouns

advice /əd'vaɪs/  
 after-school activity /'æftər skul æk'tɪvəti/  
 allowance /ə'laʊəns/  
 baby /'beɪbi/  
 ballet /bæ'leɪ/  
 bathtub /'bæθtʌb/  
 beginner /brɪ'ɡɪnər/  
 chess /tʃes/  
 chore /tʃɔːr/  
 corridor /'kɒrədɔːr/  
 credit /'kredɪt/  
 driver /'draɪvər/  
 elimination /ɪ,lɪmə'neɪʃn/  
 episode /'epɪsəʊd/  
 hit /hɪt/  
 host /həʊst/  
 lady /'leɪdi/  
 mess /mes/  
 millionaire /,mɪljə'nɛər/  
 mission /'mɪʃn/  
 organization /,ɔːrgənə'zeɪʃn/  
 repetition /,repə'tɪʃn/  
 sink /sɪŋk/  
 success /sək'ses/  
 survey /'sɜːveɪ/  
 uniform /'yʊnəfɔːm/  
 volleyball training /'vɒlibɔːl ,treɪnɪŋ/

### Verbs

save /seɪv/  
 spend /spend/

### Adjectives

average /'ævərɪdʒ/  
 basic /'beɪsɪk/  
 delicate /'delɪkət/  
 dirty /'dɜːti/  
 extra /'ekstrə/  
 foreign /'fɔːrən/  
 part-time /'pɑːt ,taɪm/  
 professional /prə'feʃjənəl/  
 recent /'riːsənt/

### Adverbs

generally /'dʒenərəli/  
 luckily /'lʌkəli/

## Review A

### Nouns

medical certificate /'medɪkl sər'tɪfɪkət/  
 paper round /'peɪpər raʊnd/  
 participant /pɑːr'tɪsəpənt/

### Verbs

borrow /'bɒrəʊ/  
 deliver /dɪ'lɪvər/

## Culture club A

### Nouns

area /'eɪrɪə/  
 borough /'bɒrəʊ/  
 century /'sentʃəri/  
 coast /kəʊst/  
 immigrant /'ɪmɪgrənt/  
 liberty /'lɪbərti/  
 native /'neɪtɪv/  
 resident /'rezɪdənt/

### Verbs

create /kri'eɪt/  
 mix /mɪks/  
 settle /'setl/

## Unit 3

### Personality

ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/  
 bossy /'bɒsi/  
 confident /'kɒnfədənt/  
 creative /kri'eɪtɪv/  
 friendly /'frendli/  
 hard-working /hɑːd 'wɜːkɪŋ/  
 kind /kaɪnd/  
 lazy /'leɪzi/  
 organized /'ɔːrgənəɪzd/  
 outgoing /,aʊt'ɡəʊɪŋ/  
 patient /'peɪʃnt/  
 selfish /'selfɪʃ/  
 serious /'sɪəriəs/  
 shy /ʃaɪ/  
 stubborn /'stʌbərən/

### Nouns

acrobat /'ækərbæt/  
 Aquarius /ə'kwɛəriəs/  
 ambition /æm'bɪʃn/  
 Aries /'eɪrɪz/  
 astrology /ə'strɒlədʒi/  
 Cancer /'kænsər/  
 Capricorn /'kæprɪkɔːn/  
 characteristic /,kærəktə'rɪstɪk/  
 circus /'sɜːkəs/  
 degree /dɪ'ɡri/  
 department /dɪ'pɑːtmənt/  
 designer /dɪ'zaɪnər/  
 doctor /'dɒktər/  
 element /'eləmənt/  
 events organizer /ɪ'vents 'ɔːrgənəɪzər/  
 exhibition /,ɪksə'bɪʃn/  
 experience /ɪk'spɪəriəns/  
 festival /'festɪvl/  
 games tester /'geɪms 'tɛstər/  
 Gemini /'dʒemɪni/  
 gymnastics /dʒɪm'næstɪks/  
 horoscope /'hɒrəskəʊp/  
 Leo /'liːoʊ/  
 Libra /'lɪbrə/  
 martial arts /'mɑːrʃl ɑːrts/  
 Pisces /'paɪsɪz/  
 planet /'plænət/  
 position /pə'zɪʃn/  
 practice /'præktɪs/  
 Sagittarius /,sædʒə'tɛəriəs/  
 Scorpio /'skɔːpɪoʊ/  
 star sign /'stɑː sɑɪn/  
 Taurus /'tɔːrəs/  
 Virgo /'vɜːɡəʊ/  
 wheel /wiːl/  
 zodiac /'zəʊdiæk/

### Verbs

depend /dɪ'pend/  
 divide /dɪ'vaɪd/  
 influence /ɪnfluəns/  
 prepare /prɪ'peər/

### Other adjectives

ancient /'eɪnʃənt/  
 compatible /kəm'pætəbl/  
 emotional /ɪ'məʊʃjənəl/  
 final /'faɪnl/  
 intellectual /,ɪntə'lektʃuəl/  
 intense /ɪn'tens/  
 methodical /mə'thɒdɪkəl/  
 nonsense /'nʌnsəns/  
 sceptical /'skeptɪkəl/  
 stable /'steɪbl/  
 unusual /ʌn'yʊʒuəl/

### Adverbs

intuitive /ɪn'tuɪtɪv/

## Unit 4

## The weather

cloudy /'klaʊdi/  
 cold /kɒld/  
 foggy /'fɒgi/  
 freezing /'fri:ziŋ/  
 hot /hɒt/  
 mild /maɪld/  
 raining /'reɪnɪŋ/  
 snowing /'snəʊɪŋ/  
 sunny /'sʌni/  
 warm /wɔ:rm/  
 windy /'wɪndi/

## Nouns

accident /'æksədənt/  
 air conditioning /ɛr kən'dɪʃnɪŋ/  
 aluminum /ə'lumɪnəm/  
 aspect /'æspɛkt/  
 caiman /'keɪmən/  
 carbon dioxide /,kɑ:bən daɪ'aksəɪd/  
 carbon footprint /,kɑ:bən 'fʊtprɪnt/  
 champion /'tʃæmpjən/  
 climate /'klaɪmət/  
 effect /ɪ'fɛkt/  
 electricity /ɪ,lɛk'trɪsəti/  
 environment /ɛn'vaɪərnmənt/  
 expedition /'ɛkspə'dɪʃn/  
 explorer /ɪk'splɔ:rər/  
 gas /gæs/  
 global warming /'gləʊbl wɔ:rnɪŋ/  
 greenhouse gases /'grɪnhaʊs ,gæzɪs/  
 jaguar /'dʒægwɑ:r/  
 journey /'dʒɜ:ni/  
 key /ki/  
 lamp /læmp/  
 picnic /'pɪknɪk/  
 piranha fish /pə'rɑ:nə fɪʃ/  
 plastic bag /'plæstɪk bæɡ/  
 prediction /prɪ'dɪkʃn/  
 questionnaire /kwɛstʃə'nɛr/  
 rainforest /'reɪn,fɔ:rɛst/  
 rainwater /'reɪn,wɔ:tər/  
 temperature /'tɛmprətʃər/  
 wild animal /waɪld 'ænəml/

## Verbs

calculate /'kælkjələɪt/  
 contribute /kən'trɪbyut/  
 measure /'meɪʒər/  
 panic /'pænɪk/  
 protect /prə'tɛkt/  
 succeed /sək'sɪd/  
 supply /sə'plai/  
 surround /sə'raʊnd/

## Other adjectives

everyday /'evrɪdeɪ/  
 extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/  
 heavy /'hevi/  
 in fashion /ɪn 'fæʃn/  
 rare /rɛr/  
 tropical /'trɒpɪkl/  
 weak /wik/

## Adverbs

directly /dɪ'rektli/

## Review B

## Nouns

charity /'tʃærəti/  
 weather forecast /'weðər 'fɔ:kæst/

## Verbs

celebrate /'seləbreɪt/

## Culture club B

## Nouns

atmosphere /'ætməsfɪr/  
 climatologist /,klaɪmə'tɒlədʒɪst/  
 crop /krɒp/  
 economist /ɪ'kɒnəmɪst/  
 expert /'ɛkspɜ:t/  
 hail /heɪl/  
 incident /ɪn'sɪdənt/  
 lemon /'lemən/  
 meteorologist /,mi:tɪə'rɒlədʒɪst/  
 phenomenon /fə'nɒmənən/  
 ski resort /ski rɪ'zɔ:rt/

## Verbs

destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/  
 postpone /pəʊst'pəʊn/  
 sculpt /skʌlpt/

## Unit 5

## Exciting experiences

do a parachute jump /du ə 'pærəʃʊt dʒʌmp/  
 fly in an airplane /flaɪ ɪn ən 'eɪrpleɪn/  
 go camping /gəʊ 'kæmpɪŋ/  
 go scuba diving /gəʊ 'skubə ,daɪvɪŋ/  
 meet a famous person /mi:t ə 'feɪməs ,pɜ:sn/  
 ride a roller coaster /raɪd ə 'rəʊlə rkoʊstər/  
 stay in a hotel /,steɪ ɪn ə hoʊ'tel/  
 travel abroad /,trævl ə'brɒd/  
 watch a soccer game /wɒtʃ ə 'səkər geɪm/

## Nouns

bowling lane /'boʊlɪŋ ,leɪn/  
 bungee jump /'bʌndʒɪ dʒʌmp/  
 camel /'kæml/  
 contact /'kɒntækt/  
 dance course /dæns kɔ:rs/  
 food poisoning /'fu:d ,pɔɪzɪnɪŋ/  
 hill /hɪl/  
 marathon /'mærəθən/  
 reef /ri:f/  
 sabbatical /sə'bætɪkl/  
 swimming costume /'swɪmɪŋ ,kɒstəm/  
 tower /'taʊər/  
 washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ məʃɪn/

## Other verbs

book /buk/  
 canoe /kə'nu:  
 hydro-zorbing /'haɪdrəʊ zɔ:rbɪŋ/  
 invent /ɪn'vent/  
 ride a horse /raɪd ə hɔ:rs/  
 roll /rəʊl/

## Adjectives

honest /'ɒnɪst/  
 normal /'nɔ:ml/

## Adverbs

completely /kəm'plɪtli/

## Unit 6

## Books

autobiography /,ɔ:təbaɪ'ɑ:grəfi/  
 biography /baɪ'ɑ:grəfi/  
 detective / crime story /dɪ'tektɪv, kram ,stɔ:ri/  
 fantasy story /'fæntəsi ,stɔ:ri/  
 horror story /'hɔ:rər ,stɔ:ri/  
 love story /'lʌv ,stɔ:ri/  
 science fiction story /saɪəns 'fɪkʃn ,stɔ:ri/  
 spy story /'spaɪ ,stɔ:ri/

## Other nouns

agent /'eɪdʒənt/  
 alien universe /'eɪliən ,ju:nəvɜ:s/  
 bestseller /,best'selər/

boss /bɒs/  
 discount /'dɪskaʊnt/  
 expression /ɪk'spreʃn/  
 gun /gʌn/  
 motive /'moʊtɪv/  
 princess /'prɪnsəs/  
 prize /praɪz/  
 receipt /rɪ'sɪt/  
 sale /seɪl/  
 secret service /'sɪkrət ,sɜ:vəs/  
 shock /ʃɒk/  
 souvenir /,su:və'nɪr/  
 special forces /'speʃl ,fɔ:sɪz/

## Verbs

admit /əd'mɪt/  
 increase /ɪn'kri:s/  
 insist /ɪn'sɪst/  
 kill /kɪl/  
 murder /'mɜ:dər/  
 pour /pɔ:r/  
 record /rɪ'kɔ:rd/  
 risk /rɪsk/

## Adjectives

classic /'klæsɪk/  
 empty /'ɛmpti/  
 mysterious /mɪ'stɪriəs/  
 successful /sək'sesfl/  
 top secret /tɒp 'sɪkrət/

## Adverbs

exactly /ɪg'zæktli/

## Review C

## Nouns

apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/  
 downtown /daʊn'taʊn/  
 extraterrestrial /,ɛkstrə'tɛstriəl/  
 term /tɜ:m/

## Culture club C

## Nouns

bald eagle /bɒld 'iɡl/  
 bear /ber/  
 boat trip /'boʊt trɪp/  
 cultural group /'kʌltʃərəl grʊp/  
 floatplane /'fləʊtpleɪn/  
 fortune /'fɔ:rtʃən/  
 frontier /frʌn'tɪr/  
 glacier /'gleɪʃər/  
 hump /hʌmp/  
 orca /'ɔ:kə/  
 sea lion /'si ,laɪən/  
 valley /'væli/  
 waterfall /'wɔ:tərfɔ:l/  
 whale /weɪl/  
 wildlife /'waɪldlaɪf/

## Verbs

hunt /hʌnt/  
 relieve /,ri'lɪv/

## Adjectives

spectacular /spek'tækjələr/  
 traditional /trə'dɪʃnəl/

## Unit 7

## Crime

kidnap someone /'kɪdnæp ,sʌmwʌn/  
 kidnapper /'kɪdnæpər/  
 mug someone /'mʌɡ ,sʌmwʌn/  
 mugger /'mʌɡər/  
 murder someone /'mɜ:dər ,sʌmwʌn/  
 murderer /'mɜ:dərər/  
 pick someone's pocket /,pɪk sʌmwʌns 'pʌkət/  
 pickpocket /'pɪkpʌkət/  
 rob a bank /rɒb ə 'bæŋk/  
 robber /'rɒbər/

# Word list

shoplift /'ʃɒplɪft/  
 shoplifter /'ʃɒplɪftər/  
 steal a painting /stɪl ə 'peɪntɪŋ/  
 thief /θiːf/  
 vandal /'vændl/  
 vandalize a building /'vændlaɪz ə 'bɪldɪŋ/

## Other nouns

case /keɪs/  
 curse /kɜːs/  
 death /deθ/  
 phone box /fəʊn bɒks/  
 suspect /'sʌspɛkt/  
 victim /'vɪktɪm/  
 wallet /'wɒlɪt/

## Verbs

die /daɪ/  
 follow /'fɒləʊ/  
 hit /hɪt/  
 lock /lɒk/  
 run away /rʌn ə'weɪ/  
 report /rɪ'pɔːt/  
 smoke a pipe /smʊk ə paɪp/  
 cross the road /krɒs θə rəʊd/

## Adjectives

alone /ə'ləʊn/  
 monstrous /'mɒnstərəs/

## Unit 8

### Human achievement

architect /'ɑːkɪtɛkt/  
 artist /'ɑːtɪst/  
 composer /kəm'pəʊzər/  
 explorer /ɪk'splɔːrər/  
 inventor /ɪn'ventər/  
 politician /,pəlɪ'tɪʃn/  
 scientist /'saɪəntɪst/  
 writer /'raɪtər/

### Other nouns

aqua globe /'ækwə gləʊb/  
 bacteria /bæk'tɪriə/  
 basis /'beɪsɪs/  
 component /kəm'pəʊnənt/  
 gadget /'gædʒɪt/  
 gas lamp /gæs 'læmp/  
 genetic code /dʒə'netɪk kəʊd/  
 genius /'dʒɪniəs/  
 hard drive /'hɑːd draɪv/  
 hypertext /'haɪpətɛkst/  
 laboratory /'læbrətɔːri/  
 law of gravity /lə əv 'grævəti/  
 microchip /'maɪkrəʊtʃɪp/  
 miniskirt /'mɪnɪskɜːt/  
 molecule /'mɒləkyul/  
 network /'netwɜːk/  
 penicillin /,penə'sɪlɪn/  
 plate /pleɪt/  
 program /'prəʊgrəm/  
 ring /rɪŋ/  
 signal /'sɪgnəl/  
 speaker /'spiːkər/  
 substance /'sʌbstəns/  
 web browser /'web ,braʊzər/

### Verbs

access /'æksɛs/  
 attach /ə'tætʃ/  
 back up /'bæk ʌp/  
 compose /kəm'pəʊz/  
 connect /kə'nekt/  
 consider /kən'sɪdər/  
 cut /kʌt/  
 debate /dɪ'beɪt/  
 demonstrate /'dɛmənstreɪt/

develop /dɪ'veləp/  
 nominate /'nɒmɪneɪt/  
 receive /rɪ'siːv/  
 send /sɛnd/  
 transmit /træns'mɪt/  
 work out /wɜːk aʊt/

### Adjectives

electronic /ɪ,lɛk'trɒnɪk/  
 external /ɪk'stɜːnl/  
 impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbl/  
 influential /ɪnflu'ɛnʃl/  
 radioactive /,reɪdɪəʊ'æktɪv/  
 similar /'sɪmələr/  
 transatlantic /,trænzət'læntɪk/  
 waterproof /'wɔːtəpruːf/

## Review D

### Nouns

bench /bentʃ/  
 inquiry /'ɪnkwɪəri/  
 purse /pɜːs/  
 security camera /sə'kyʊərəti ,kæmərə/  
 sushi bar /'suːʃi bɑːr/

### Verbs

crash /kræʃ/  
 escape /ɪ'skeɪp/

## Culture club D

### Nouns

discipline /'dɪsəplɪn/  
 grades /greɪdʒ/  
 hero /'hɪrəʊ/  
 program /'prəʊgrəm/  
 rate /reɪt/  
 recipe /'resəpi/

### Verbs

honor /'ɒnər/  
 negotiate /ne'ɡəʊʃɪət/  
 survive /sər'vaɪv/  
 vote /vəʊt/

### Adjectives

spectacular /spɛk'tækjʊlələr/  
 traditional /trə'dɪʃnəl/

## Curriculum extra A

### Nouns

acid /'æsɪd/  
 alkali /'ælkəlaɪ/  
 bee /bi/  
 chemical /'kemɪkl/  
 citric acid /'sɪtrɪk ,æsɪd/  
 dishwasher tablet /'dɪʃwɑːʃər ,tæblət/  
 emulsion /ɪ'mʌlʃn/  
 hydrogen /'haɪdrədʒən/  
 metal /'metl/  
 oven /'ʌvən/  
 particle /'pɑːtɪkl/  
 paste /peɪst/  
 skin /skɪn/  
 vinegar /'vɪnɪgər/  
 wasp /wɒsp/

### Verbs

attract /ə'trækt/  
 burn /bɜːn/  
 combine /kəm'baɪn/  
 dissolve /dɪ'zɒlv/  
 react /rɪ'ækt/  
 sting /stɪŋ/  
 touch /tʌtʃ/

### Adjectives

plant-based /plænt beɪsd/

## Curriculum extra B

### Nouns

astronomer /ə'strɒnəmər/  
 billion /'bɪljən/  
 chariot /'tʃæriət/  
 constellation /,kɒnstə'leɪʃn/  
 explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒn/  
 galaxy /'gæləksi/  
 hemisphere /'heməsfɪr/  
 parrot /'pærət/  
 pattern /'pætərn/  
 sky /skaɪ/  
 supernova /,sʊpər'noʊvə/  
 telescope /,telə'skəʊp/

### Adjectives

clear /klaɪr/  
 dwarf /dwɔːf/

## Curriculum extra C

### Nouns

army /'ɑːmi/  
 battle /'bætl/  
 city gate /'sɪti geɪt/  
 myth /mɪθ/  
 sequel /'siːkwəl/  
 war /wɔːr/

### Verbs

exist /ɪg'zɪst/  
 fight /faɪt/  
 trick /trɪk/

### Adjectives

reunited /,riju'naɪtɪd/  
 symbolic /sɪm'bɒlɪk/

## Curriculum extra D

### Nouns

algorithm /'ælɡərɪðəm/  
 angle /'æŋɡl/  
 arithmetic /ə'rɪθmətɪk/  
 base /beɪs/  
 baseman /,beɪsmən/  
 code /kəʊd/  
 diamond /'daɪmænd/  
 equation /ɪ'kweɪʒn/  
 geometry /dʒɪ'ɑːmətri/  
 home plate /'həʊm pleɪt/  
 hypotenuse /haɪ'pɒtənuz/  
 light bulb /laɪt bʌlb/  
 mathematician /,mæθmə'tɪʃn/  
 puzzle /'pʌzl/  
 recipe /'resəpi/  
 right angle /raɪt 'æŋɡl/  
 sum /sʌm/  
 task /tæsk/  
 theory /'θɪri/

### Verbs

burn out /bɜːn aʊt/  
 plug in /plʌɡ ɪn/  
 prove /pruːv/  
 replace /rɪ'pleɪs/

# Got it!

## Level 2

### Workbook

Philippa Bowen & Denis Delaney



# 1

# Grammar rules

## must

### Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	
I <b>must</b> go	it <b>must</b> go
you <b>must</b> go	we <b>must</b> go
he <b>must</b> go	you <b>must</b> go
she <b>must</b> go	they <b>must</b> go

Subject + | **must** | + base form of the verb

Negative	
Full form	Short form
I <b>must not</b> go	I <b>mustn't</b> go
you <b>must not</b> go	you <b>mustn't</b> go
he <b>must not</b> go	he <b>mustn't</b> go
she <b>must not</b> go	she <b>mustn't</b> go
it <b>must not</b> go	it <b>mustn't</b> go
we <b>must not</b> go	we <b>mustn't</b> go
you <b>must not</b> go	you <b>mustn't</b> go
they <b>must not</b> go	they <b>mustn't</b> go

Subject + | **must not (mustn't)** | + base form of the verb

**1 Must is a modal verb. All modal verbs follow the same rules:**

- **We only use one form for all persons.**  
I **must** study. He **must** study.  
We **must** study. They **must** study.
- **We do not add an -s to must with he, she, or it.**  
He **must** study. NOT ~~He musts study.~~
- **We always follow must with another verb in the base form.**  
You **must** eat this pizza.  
NOT ~~You must to eat this pizza.~~  
You **mustn't go** to school.  
NOT ~~You mustn't to go to school.~~
- **We don't use don't / doesn't with the negative form of modal verbs.**  
You **mustn't** talk.  
NOT ~~You don't must talk.~~

**2 The negative form of must is must not. In spoken and informal written English, must not is usually abbreviated to mustn't.**  
You must not shout. = You **mustn't** shout.

**3 We use must to talk about necessity.**

**Necessity means that you cannot avoid doing something.**

You **must** come home before 9:30 p.m. (*You cannot come home after 9:30 p.m.*)

I **must** call Mel. It's her birthday today. (*You cannot call Mel tomorrow because it is her birthday today.*)

I **must** do my homework now. (*You cannot do your homework later because you are busy.*)

**4 We use must to express general obligation.**

You **must** drive on the right in the U.S.

**5 We use mustn't to express prohibition.**

You **mustn't** use a dictionary in the test!

You **mustn't** use your cell phone in class.

### Compounds: some / any / no

	Person	Thing	Place
some	someone / somebody	something	somewhere
any	anyone / anybody	anything	anywhere
no	no one / nobody	nothing	nowhere

**1 We use -one / -body to talk about people.**

**2 We use -thing to talk about things and objects.**

**3 We use -where to talk about places.**

**4 We use the compound some in affirmative sentences.**

Someone / Somebody is at the door.

There's always something interesting to do.

I want to go somewhere today.

**5 We use the compound any in negative and interrogative sentences.**

There isn't anyone / anybody at the door.

Is there anyone / anybody at the door?

There isn't anything interesting to do.

Is there anything interesting to do?

I don't want to go anywhere today.

Do you want to go anywhere interesting today?

## 6 We use *no* in affirmative sentences to mean something does not exist.

There's **no one** / **nobody** in the classroom.

The teacher said **nothing** about doing extra homework.

There's **nowhere** to go swimming in Highmore.

Watch out!

In English, only one negative is used. In a sentence with *no*, we use the verb in the affirmative form.

There's **nothing** on TV.

NOT ~~There isn't nothing on TV.~~

I know **no one** in my new school.

NOT ~~I don't know no one in my new school.~~

## Compounds: *every*

	Person	Thing	Place
<b>every</b>	everyone / everybody	everything	everywhere

### 1 We use the compound *every* to talk about all people, objects, or places.

**Everyone** / **Everybody** is here.

**Everything** is ready.

We went **everywhere** in the museum.

### 2 We use the compound *every* in affirmative, negative, and interrogative forms.

**Everyone** / **Everybody** came to my party.

We didn't have **everything** ready.

Did you go **everywhere** in the museum?

### 3 We use the compound *everyone* / *everybody* with a singular verb.

**Everyone** likes Lady Gaga.

**Everybody** in my class is from Brazil.

## Word list

### Places around town

bank \_\_\_\_\_

bus station \_\_\_\_\_

bus stop \_\_\_\_\_

café \_\_\_\_\_

church \_\_\_\_\_

hospital \_\_\_\_\_

library \_\_\_\_\_

park \_\_\_\_\_

parking lot \_\_\_\_\_

police station \_\_\_\_\_

post office \_\_\_\_\_

shopping mall \_\_\_\_\_

sports center \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## Places around town

## 1 Match the word halves.

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1 shopping | a office  |
| 2 police   | b stop    |
| 3 sports   | c mall    |
| 4 parking  | d center  |
| 5 post     | e station |
| 6 bus      | f lot     |

## 2 Read the descriptions. Then write the place name.

There are a lot of different stores here.

shopping mall

- People go to this place when they aren't well or when they have an accident.  
h \_\_\_\_\_
- You can usually swim and play other sports here.  
s \_\_\_\_\_
- There are a lot of books here. People can borrow them and take them home for two or three weeks.  
l \_\_\_\_\_
- You usually come here when you lose your passport or cell phone.  
p \_\_\_\_\_
- Some people go to this place on Sundays. They sing and pray here.  
c \_\_\_\_\_
- You can send mail and parcels here.  
p \_\_\_\_\_
- There are trees and flowers here. You can walk and relax, and sometimes there's a play area for children.  
p \_\_\_\_\_
- People come here to change money.  
b \_\_\_\_\_
- You usually pay to leave your car here.  
p \_\_\_\_\_
- People come here to have a drink. They sometimes eat here, too.  
c \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

## must / mustn't

3 Complete the sentences with *must* (✓) or *mustn't* (✗) and the verbs in the box.

clean do eat go  
send study watch

- You mustn't send text messages in class! (✓)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ for the math exam. (✓)
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ food in your bedroom. (✗)
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework in front of the TV. (✗)
  - The boys \_\_\_\_\_ straight home after school. (✓)
  - Katia \_\_\_\_\_ TV after 10 p.m. (✗)
  - Girls! You \_\_\_\_\_ your room. It's awful. (✓)

4 Read the information about Ocean County Library. Then complete the rules with *must* or *mustn't* and a verb.

## OCEAN COUNTY LIBRARY

## Information for library members

- You can borrow a maximum of four books, but please return them to the library after two weeks.
- You can only read dictionaries in the library. Don't take them home.
- Please don't use cell phones or talk loudly in the library.
- Please don't eat or drink in the library.
- You can use the computers, but please get a password from the information desk.

## LIBRARY RULES

- You mustn't borrow more than four books.
- You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your books to the library after two weeks.
- You <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the dictionaries home.
- You <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ cell phones or talk loudly.
- You <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or drink.
- You <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your password from the information desk.

## Compounds: some / any / no

5 Complete the sentences with *some*, *any*, or *no* using *-thing*, *-where*, or *-body*.

We're not going anywhere this weekend.

Nobody came to soccer practice today!

- I'm bored! I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ to do!
- The cat isn't \_\_\_\_\_ in the yard.
- This math problem is really difficult. Does \_\_\_\_\_ know the answer?
- They live \_\_\_\_\_ in Delaware.
- There is \_\_\_\_\_ good on TV tonight. Let's watch a DVD.
- There is \_\_\_\_\_ to go. It's boring here.
- I didn't see \_\_\_\_\_ from my grade at the party.
- Jack wants \_\_\_\_\_ to eat.

6 Write sentences in affirmative (+), negative (-), or interrogative (?) forms.

There's someone in the classroom. (?)

Is there anyone in the classroom?

- I didn't do anything interesting on the weekend. (+)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Did Helen go anywhere on Sunday? (-)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- There was someone at the bus stop. (?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- You have something in your bag. (?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I know somebody in that school. (-)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Kevin didn't say anything. (+)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Compounds: every

7 Write five sentences using the phrases in A, B, and C.

A Are you inviting Mom does We went Does Kelly have They cycled I don't know	B everything everyone everywhere	C in our car. on their vacation. in my school. to your party? in our house. for her trip?
---	---	--

Are you inviting everyone to your party?

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## Round-up

8 Read Mia's e-mail. Choose the correct answers.

Hi, Zoe

Hello from Woodsboro – my new town. It's very small and it's very boring! There's a post office, a store, and a church, but **anything / nothing** exciting happens here!

Everyone in the town <sup>1</sup>is / are friendly, but there's <sup>2</sup>no one / anyone my age and there's <sup>3</sup>anything / nothing to do! I go to school in Union Bridge, a town near Woodsboro. I only started two days ago and, at the moment <sup>4</sup>nothing / everything at school is new! We <sup>5</sup>must / mustn't change classroom after every lesson, but I don't know where the classrooms are! There are a lot of rules at my new school. We <sup>6</sup>must / mustn't use our cell phones and we <sup>7</sup>must / mustn't talk during lessons. We <sup>8</sup>must / mustn't run in the corridors and we mustn't eat <sup>9</sup>something / anything in the classrooms! It's difficult to remember <sup>10</sup>something / everything!

Anyway, I must stop now because I have some homework for tomorrow.

Love,

Mia.

9 Correct the mistakes in the sentences below.

Mia lives in Union Bridge.

Mia lives in Woodsboro.

- A lot of exciting things happen in the town.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Nobody is friendly in Woodsboro.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- There are some people of Mia's age in Woodsboro.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- There are a lot of things to do.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Mia's new school doesn't have any rules.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The students mustn't leave their classrooms after a lesson at school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- They must run in the corridors and they must eat their lunch in the classrooms.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Asking for and giving directions

### 1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

as far as the \_\_\_\_\_ at the traffic lights  
go up ~~how do I get to~~ opposite

- A Excuse me. How do I get to the bank, please?  
 B Go down Springwood Avenue  
 1 \_\_\_\_\_ roundabout. Turn left and 2 \_\_\_\_\_ East Street.  
 Go straight on 3 \_\_\_\_\_ and the bank is on the left. It's 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the church.  
 A Thanks.

### 2 Where do the people want to go? Look at the map. Then read the directions and complete the questions with the name of the place.

You are at the shopping mall.

A Excuse me. How do I get to the bank please?

B Go out of the shopping mall and cross the road. Go down Black Tail Boulevard as far as the traffic lights then turn left. It's on the left, next to the post office.

#### 1 You are at the market.

A Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the \_\_\_\_\_, please?

B Yes, sure. Go out of the market and go to the end of this road. Turn right at the junction and go down Poindexter Street as far as the traffic lights. Turn left. It's on the right, opposite a church.

#### 2 You are at the parking lot.

A Excuse me. How do I get to the \_\_\_\_\_, please?

B Go out of the parking lot and turn right. Cross Hemon Street and go down Utah Street. At the end of the road, opposite the sports center, turn left. Take the first left and it's at the end of the road.

### 3 You are at the library.

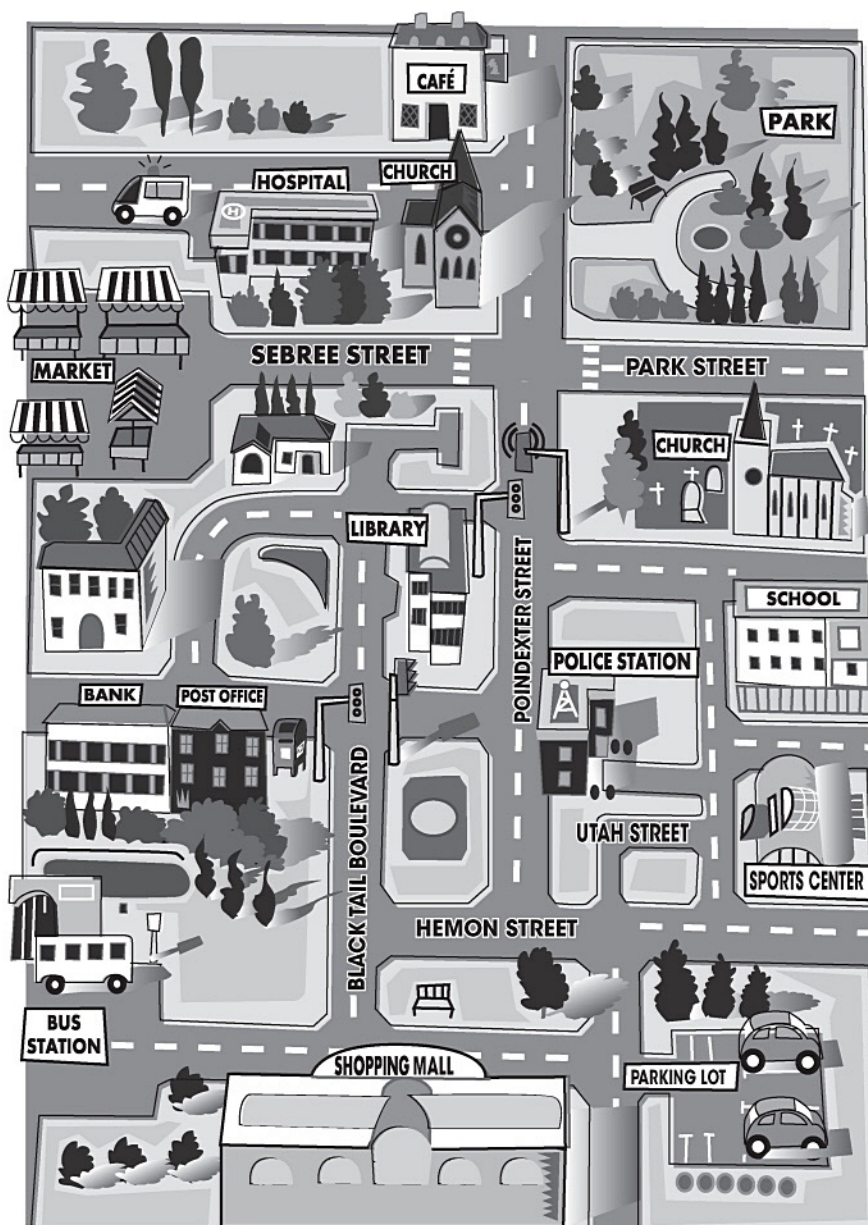
A Excuse me. Can you tell me how to get to the \_\_\_\_\_, please?

B Yes, of course. Go out of the library and turn right. Take the first turning on the right and walk down the road to Poindexter Street. Turn left onto Poindexter Street and then take the second left. It's on the left, near the church.

### 4 You are at the bank.

A Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the \_\_\_\_\_, please?

B Yes, sure. Turn right outside the bank and walk to Black Tail Boulevard. Turn right at the traffic lights and walk to the shopping mall. At the shopping mall, turn right and walk to the end of the road. It's on the right.



## Reading

### 1 Read the text. Then match the sentence halves.

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| 1 Arthur  | a is a religious community in the U.S. |
| 2 Amish   | b is a list of rules.                  |
| 3 Ordnung | c is a town in Illinois.               |

## A quiet life

Arthur is a small town in the U.S. It's in the state of Illinois, 250 km south of Chicago. In some ways it is a typical town. It has a small town center with some stores, a bank, a post office, and a few restaurants, but there's also something very different about Arthur. Some of the houses are modern but some houses don't have electricity or phones. Then, in the parking lots you can see horses and carts next to the cars. That is because a lot of Amish people live there.

The Amish are an old religious community. They originally came from Switzerland and Germany in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. They left Europe to escape religious persecution and a lot of them went to live in America. Today the Amish live in small communities in the states of Ohio, Pennsylvania, Iowa, and Illinois. They live very simple lives.

The Amish community has a lot of rules, or Ordnung. These rules tell them what they must and mustn't do. For example, they mustn't drive cars, use phones, or have electricity in their homes. There are also rules about their clothes and hair. Amish women and girls must wear long dresses and the men must wear dark jackets and pants. Women mustn't cut their hair short and men must have beards. Some of the rules are strict, but the Amish are happy to follow them because they like their traditional way of life.



### 2 Read the text again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Why is Arthur different to other small towns in the U.S?
- 2 Where did the Amish originally come from?
- 3 When and why did they leave Europe?
- 4 What do Amish rules say about transportation and technology?
- 5 What rules are there about clothes and hair?



## Writing

### 3 Read what Rebecca, an Amish student, says about her school. Then write a paragraph comparing it to your school. Write about:

- the age of students (from ... to ...)
- the number of students in a class
- the number of classrooms in your school
- the subjects you must study at school
- the length of your school day

*"Amish children must start school when they are six years old and they finish at fourteen. We usually go to school from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. There are nineteen children in my school and we all have lessons in one classroom. At school we must study math, English, German, geography, history and music."* Rebecca

## have to

### Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	
I <b>have to</b> go	it <b>has to</b> go
you <b>have to</b> go	we <b>have to</b> go
he <b>has to</b> go	you <b>have to</b> go
she <b>has to</b> go	they <b>have to</b> go

Subject + | *have / has to* | + base form of the verb

#### 1 We use *have to* to express an external necessity or obligation.

I **have to** call my grandpa. It's his birthday.  
Miku **has to** go to the doctor's.

#### 2 We use *have to* to express a necessity in the present or in the future.

I **have to** send this e-mail now.  
Edu **has to** get up early tomorrow morning for school.

Negative
I <b>don't have to</b> go
you <b>don't have to</b> go
he <b>doesn't have to</b> go
she <b>doesn't have to</b> go
it <b>doesn't have to</b> go
we <b>don't have to</b> go
you <b>don't have to</b> go
they <b>don't have to</b> go

Subject + | *don't have to / doesn't have to* | + base form of the verb

- We use the negative forms *don't have to* / *doesn't have to* when there is no necessity or obligation.

In the U.S., students **don't have to** wear school uniform.

She **doesn't have to** pay for the tickets now.

## have to

### Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	
Do I <b>have to</b> go?	Does it <b>have to</b> go?
Do you <b>have to</b> go?	Do we <b>have to</b> go?
Does he <b>have to</b> go?	Do you <b>have to</b> go?
Does she <b>have to</b> go?	Do they <b>have to</b> go?

Do / Does | + subject + | *have to* | + base form of the verb

Short answers	
Affirmative	Negative
Yes, I <b>do</b> .	No, I <b>don't</b> .
Yes, you <b>do</b> .	No, you <b>don't</b> .
Yes, he <b>does</b> .	No, he <b>doesn't</b> .
Yes, she <b>does</b> .	No, she <b>doesn't</b> .
Yes, it <b>does</b> .	No, it <b>doesn't</b> .
Yes, you <b>do</b> .	No, you <b>don't</b> .
Yes, we <b>do</b> .	No, we <b>don't</b> .
Yes, they <b>do</b> .	No, they <b>don't</b> .

Yes, | + subject pronoun + | *do / does.*  
No, | + subject pronoun + | *don't / doesn't.*

- We use the auxiliary verb *do* with *have to* in the interrogative and short answer forms.

Do I have to get up early tomorrow?

NOT Have I to get up early tomorrow?

Yes, you **do**. / No, you **don't**.

NOT Yes, you have. / No, you don't have.

## have to / must

- Have to* and *must* have a similar meaning. Both forms show a necessity or an obligation, but their uses are different.

- We use *have to* to show an obligation which the speaker sees as external (for example a regulation or an order from someone else).

In my job I **have to** work from nine o'clock to five o'clock.

(The obligation comes from "outside" the speaker. The speaker sees the obligation to work between nine o'clock and five o'clock as an external obligation.)

- We use **must** to show something which the speaker sees as necessary.

I **must** do some more work. I have an exam tomorrow.

(The obligation comes from the speaker. The speaker sees the obligation to do some more work as something which is necessary to do.)

## mustn't / don't have to

- **Mustn't** and **don't have to** have different meanings.
  - We use **mustn't** when we are not allowed to do something.  
You **mustn't** copy during tests.
  - We use **don't have to** when there is no necessity or obligation.  
He **doesn't have to** invite them to his party.

## Gerunds

- A gerund is the **-ing** form of the verb. We use the gerund as the subject of a sentence.  
Eating hamburgers and French fries is unhealthy.  
Swimming is fun.

## Verb + -ing form

Subject	Verb	-ing form
I / you / he / she / it / we / you / they	love like enjoy prefer don't mind don't like hate	swimming

- We use the verb + **-ing** form after a verb of preference such as **love, like, enjoy, prefer, don't mind, don't like, and hate**.  
I love shopping, but I hate cleaning my room.  
I don't like riding my bike to school.

## Word list

### Housework

- clean my room \_\_\_\_\_
- clean the bathroom \_\_\_\_\_
- do the cooking \_\_\_\_\_
- do the dusting \_\_\_\_\_
- do the grocery shopping \_\_\_\_\_
- do the ironing \_\_\_\_\_
- do the washing \_\_\_\_\_
- lay / clear the table \_\_\_\_\_
- load / unload the dishwasher \_\_\_\_\_
- make my bed \_\_\_\_\_
- take out the trash \_\_\_\_\_
- wash the dishes \_\_\_\_\_



## Vocabulary

## Housework

## 1 Match the verbs and phrases.

- |         |                  |
|---------|------------------|
| 1 load  | a the dishes     |
| 2 make  | b the ironing    |
| 3 wash  | c my bedroom     |
| 4 lay   | d the dishwasher |
| 5 do    | e my bed         |
| 6 clean | f the table      |

## 2 Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

clean clear do do do take out

- clear the table
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the grocery shopping
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the trash
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the dusting

## Grammar

### have to

#### Affirmative and negative

3 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of *have to* and the verbs.

The dog has to stay (stay) in the yard. It can't come in the house. (✓)

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) the dishes every day. (✓)
- 2 Hyun \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for math tests. She's very good at math. (✗)
- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the project before the end of the month. (✗)
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) right now. Sorry! (✓)
- 5 Alak and Wasi \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to school tomorrow. (✗)
- 6 John \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) early today. (✓)

### have to

#### Interrogative and short answers

4 Look at the chart. Write questions and short answers with *have to*.

	Amy	Ryan
make his / her bed	✓	✓
load the dishwasher	✓	✗
wash the dishes	✗	✗
take out the trash	✗	✓
lay the table	✓	✓
do the ironing	✗	✗

Amy / make her bed?

Does Amy have to make her bed?

Yes, she does.

- 1 Ryan / wash the dishes?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Amy / load the dishwasher?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 they / lay the table?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Ryan / take out the trash?

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 they / do the ironing?

\_\_\_\_\_

### mustn't / don't (doesn't) have to

5 Complete the sentences with *mustn't*, *don't have to*, or *doesn't have to*.

We don't have to go to school on weekends.

- 1 Sam \_\_\_\_\_ take the dog for a walk. I took him this afternoon.
- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_ listen to music when you ride your bike.
- 3 We're having a surprise birthday party for Ben on Friday! You \_\_\_\_\_ tell him.
- 4 You \_\_\_\_\_ do the exercises now. You can do them for homework.
- 5 It's an exam! You \_\_\_\_\_ talk!
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ wash the dishes tonight! It's my brother's turn.

## Gerunds

6 Complete the sentences with the gerund form of the verbs.

Doing the dusting is more boring than washing the dishes. (do / wash)

- \_\_\_\_\_ a meal is cheaper than \_\_\_\_\_ in a café. (cook / eat)
- \_\_\_\_\_ a book is more interesting than \_\_\_\_\_ TV. (read / watch)
- \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese is more difficult than \_\_\_\_\_ English. (learn)
- \_\_\_\_\_ English is easier than \_\_\_\_\_ English. (speak / write)
- \_\_\_\_\_ is more exciting than \_\_\_\_\_. (skateboard / ski)
- \_\_\_\_\_ by car is faster than \_\_\_\_\_ by train. (travel)

7 Write three sentences like the ones in exercise 6. Use the verbs in the box.

learn listen play read run send  
shop sleep swim travel

Sleeping is more exciting than learning math!

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## Verb + -ing form

8 Look at the chart. Then write sentences.

love = 😊😊 like = 😊 don't mind = 😊  
don't like = ☹️ hate = ☹️☹️

	João	Kenji
cook	😊	☹️☹️
listen to music	😊	😊
go to the movies	☹️	😊
do homework	☹️	😊
read	☹️	😊😊
get up early	😊	😊

João / cook João likes cooking.

- Kenji / cook \_\_\_\_\_
- Kenji / read \_\_\_\_\_
- João and Kenji / listen to music \_\_\_\_\_
- João and Kenji / get up early \_\_\_\_\_
- João / go to the movies \_\_\_\_\_
- Kenji / do homework \_\_\_\_\_

## Round-up

9 Choose the correct answers.

### Saturday – the best day of the week!

For 15-year-old Kelly Wright, Saturday is the best day of the week.

"I love weekends because I don't have to / mustn't go to school! Saturday is my favorite day. On Saturday mornings, I work at a home for rescued animals. I have <sup>1</sup>to get up / getting up at 6 a.m. When I get to work I <sup>2</sup>have / must to give the animals their food. I <sup>3</sup>don't have to / mustn't be late because the animals are always hungry in the morning. After that, there are lots of other jobs to do. I love <sup>4</sup>playing / play with the dogs but I hate <sup>5</sup>wash / washing them! I <sup>6</sup>don't have to / mustn't work in the afternoon. I usually hang out with my friends. We like <sup>7</sup>going / go to the mall. <sup>8</sup>Shopping / Shop is our favorite hobby! Some of my friends go out on Saturday evening, but I can't go with them because I have to be home by 8 p.m. They <sup>9</sup>don't have to / mustn't be home until 10 p.m. My parents are very strict. It isn't fair!"



10 Read the text again. Then answer the questions.

Why does Kelly love weekends?

Kelly loves weekends because she doesn't have to go to school.

- What time does she have to get up on Saturday?
- What does she have to do when she gets to work?
- What does she love doing?
- What does she hate doing?
- What does she like doing with her friends on Saturday afternoon?
- What is their favorite hobby?
- Why can't Kelly go out with her friends on Saturday evening?

## Asking for permission

### 1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

can I go    have to do    I'm sorry, you can't  
may I go to    you can go

1

Jennifer Mom, can I go to Susan's house?

Mom 1 \_\_\_\_\_, Jennifer. You have to clean your room.

Jennifer But Mom we 2 \_\_\_\_\_ our science project.

Mom Jennifer, your room is a mess!

Jennifer But doing my science project is more important.

Mom Clean your room first. Then 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to Susan's house.

Jennifer Mom! I hate cleaning my room!

Mom Jennifer!

2

Kenny Miss Harper.

Miss Harper Yes, what is it Kenny?

Kenny 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom, please?

Miss Harper Not now, Kenny. You have to wait.

### 2 Match the questions and answers.

- 1 Dad, can I go to Ruth's house this evening?  c
- 2 Jade, can I borrow your blue T-shirt?
- 3 Mom, I'm very hungry. Can I make a sandwich?
- 4 Dad, I want to buy a magazine. Can you give me some money?
- 5 Excuse me, Miss Yates. Can I put my bag on that chair?
- 6 Can I borrow your MP3 player?
- a I'm sorry, you can't. It's in the washing machine.
- b No, you can't. Put it under your desk.
- c No, you can't. You have to babysit your little brother. Mom and I are going out.
- d No, you can't. We're having dinner soon.
- e Sure. I'm not listening to it right now.
- f OK. How much is it?

### 3 Complete the dialogues with the phrases in the box.

I'm sorry, you can't. I don't have any credit.  
I'm sorry, you can't. I have to finish writing some e-mails.

No, you can't. I'm watching the news.  
No, you can't, Olivia. Sit in front of Peter.  
Sure. The coffee is there and the milk is in the refrigerator.

~~Sure, it's very cold in here.~~  
Yes, of course. Put it under that desk.



A Can I close the window?

B Sure, it's very cold in here.

1 A May I sit next to Helen, Miss Lane?

B \_\_\_\_\_

2 A Can I watch the soccer game?

B \_\_\_\_\_

3 A Can I make some coffee?

B \_\_\_\_\_

4 A Can I use the computer?

B \_\_\_\_\_

5 A May I leave my school bag here?

B \_\_\_\_\_

6 A Can I use your cell phone?

B \_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

1 Read the text. What is it about?

- a Child labor in the U.S. today
- b Child labor in Third World Countries
- c Child labor in the U.S. in the past

## *I work downstairs in the kitchen.*

In the U.S. in the 19<sup>th</sup> century many young children worked to support their families. Children worked in factories, farms, mines, or in the homes of rich families. Read about twelve-year-old Hannah Wheatley's life as a maid in Boston in 1832.



*I start work at 5:30 a.m. and I finish at midnight. I have to clean the kitchen, wash the floors, and lay and clear the table in the dining room upstairs. I don't have to cook - Mrs. Harper, the cook, prepares the meals, but I have to help her and after every meal I have to wash the dishes. I hate washing the dishes - it takes a long time and everything has to be perfect. Last week I broke an expensive crystal glass and I had to pay for it. I work downstairs in the kitchen most of the time. I don't see the family who live in the house - that's Mr. Henderson and his wife and children. I only see Mrs. Harper and Mr. Granger - he's the head servant - and the other servants. There are strict rules in the house. We must wear a uniform and we must call Mr. Granger "Sir" and Mrs. Harper "Ma'am". We can only speak when they ask a question. I miss my family. I only go home one Sunday a month. I hate going back to the house to work, but the next day I'm happy again because I know I can send money to help my family.*

2 Complete the factfile with information from the text.

My name: Hannah Wheatley  
 My age: 1 \_\_\_\_\_  
 My occupation: 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
 My employer's name: 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 I start work at: 4 \_\_\_\_\_  
 I finish work at: 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jobs I have to do: clean the kitchen  
6 \_\_\_\_\_  
7 \_\_\_\_\_  
8 \_\_\_\_\_  
 House rules: I have to call Mr. Granger "Sir" and Mrs. Harper "Ma'am".  
 My free days: 9 \_\_\_\_\_

## Writing

3 Imagine it is 1831 and you are a can washer in a factory in Boston. Invent details to complete the fact file.

My name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 My age: \_\_\_\_\_  
 My occupation: can washer  
 My employer's name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 I start work at: \_\_\_\_\_  
 I finish work at: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jobs I have to do: count cans, wash cans, put cans in boxes  
 Factory rules: I mustn't be late.  
I mustn't speak while I'm working.  
I have to ask for permission to go to the bathroom.  
 My free days: \_\_\_\_\_



4 Write a short text about your job as a can washer. Use the information in exercise 3.

## be going to (1)

### Affirmative

Full form	Short form
I am going to play	I'm going to play
you are going to play	you're going to play
he is going to play	he's going to play
she is going to play	she's going to play
it is going to play	it's going to play
we are going to play	we're going to play
you are going to play	you're going to play
they are going to play	they're going to play

Subject +	am are is	going to	+ base form of the verb
-----------	-----------------	----------	-------------------------

#### 1 We use *be going to* to:

- talk about people's intentions.  
She's going to become an actor.
- talk about things which people have decided to do in the future.  
I'm going to play tennis tonight.

#### 2 We usually use the short form of *be* with *be going to*.

They're going to Sue's party on Saturday.

## be going to

### Negative

Full form
I am not going to play
you are not going to play
he is not going to play
she is not going to play
it is not going to play
we are not going to play
you are not going to play
they are not going to play

### Short form

I 'm not going to play
you aren't going to play
he isn't going to play
she isn't going to play
it isn't going to play
we aren't going to play
you aren't going to play
they aren't going to play

Subject +	'm not aren't isn't	going to	+ base form of the verb
-----------	---------------------------	----------	-------------------------

- We usually use the short form of *be* with *be going to*.

They aren't going to Sue's party on Saturday.

## be going to

### Interrogative and short answers

#### Interrogative form

Am I going to play?
Are you going to play?
Is he going to play?
Is she going to play?
Is it going to play?
Are we going to play?
Are you going to play?
Are they going to play?

Am Are Is	+ subject	going to	+ base form of the verb
-----------------	-----------	----------	-------------------------

## Short answers

Affirmative	Negative
Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Yes, we are.	No, we aren't.
Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

Yes, | + subject | am / are / is.  
No, | pronoun + | 'm not / aren't / isn't.

- We usually use the short form of *be* with *be going to* in the negative short answer.  
Are they **going to** Sue's party on Saturday?  
Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

**be going to (2)**

- We also use *be going to* to make predictions when there is something in the present which tells us about the future.  
Look at the big, black clouds. It's **going to** rain.  
It's late! My mom's **going to** be angry!

## Verb + infinitive / -ing form

Verb + infinitive		Verb + -ing form	
I hope		I like	
		I love	
I want	to fly.	I hate	
		I don't mind	flying.
I'd like		I prefer	
		I enjoy	

- After some verbs we use the infinitive with *to* and after some verbs we use the *-ing* form.

I **hope to go** on vacation soon.

She **wants to write** you an e-mail.

We'd **like to leave** early because we're tired.

I **enjoy playing** computer games.

I **don't mind visiting** my grandma on the weekends.

Watch out!

Notice the difference between *like* and *'d like*:

I like going to the mountains.

(I often go to the mountains and I like it.)

I'd like to go to the mountains.

(In the future, I want to go to the mountains.)

## Word list

## Personality

ambitious \_\_\_\_\_

bossy \_\_\_\_\_

confident \_\_\_\_\_

creative \_\_\_\_\_

friendly \_\_\_\_\_

hard-working \_\_\_\_\_

kind \_\_\_\_\_

lazy \_\_\_\_\_

organized \_\_\_\_\_

outgoing \_\_\_\_\_

patient \_\_\_\_\_

selfish \_\_\_\_\_

serious \_\_\_\_\_

shy \_\_\_\_\_

stubborn \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## Personality

## 1 Choose the correct answers.

Jason is really selfish / bossy. He always tells people what to do.

- 1 Don't be so lazy / hard-working! Get out of bed!
- 2 Wow. Did you paint that? You're very stubborn / creative.
- 3 Don't be shy / confident, Kelly. Just think about the play and forget the people in the theater.
- 4 Davi is very outgoing / organized. He likes meeting new people at parties.
- 5 Nina's very kind / patient. She helps the old people next door with their housework.
- 6 Lara is very selfish / ambitious. She never shares anything with anyone.

## Grammar

be going to  
Affirmative and negative2 Complete the e-mail from Jenny with the correct affirmative forms of *be going to* and the verbs in the box.

cook do have help learn  
listen make wear work

Hi Jess!

We're back from our vacation in Australia – here's a photo of me on Bondi Beach! My hair is shorter now and I 'm going to make a lot of other changes in my life, too. I

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ hard this year and I
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ all my homework! I'm tired of all my CDs so I
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to different music this year, too.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a party before school starts. We
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Australian hats, Mom
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ Australian food, and I
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_ her. Yes, I
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ to cook this year as well!
- See you soon,  
Jenny

3 Complete the sentences. Use the correct negative forms of *be going to* and the phrases in the box.

buy it do it today eat it  
get up early play in the game read it

This cake is horrible! I 'm not going to eat it.

- 1 This book is boring. I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Naoto and Haruki don't like the band's new CD. They \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 It's Sunday! We \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Rob isn't very well. He \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We have lots of history homework, but we \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct affirmative and negative forms of *be going to* and the verbs in the box.

~~drop it~~ jump pass the test  
score a goal win the race



He 's going to drop it.



1 He \_\_\_\_\_.



2 She \_\_\_\_\_.



3 She \_\_\_\_\_.



4 He \_\_\_\_\_.

## be going to Interrogative and short answers

5 Complete the interview with the correct forms of *be going to*.

Pop Star Magazine interviews American singer Suzie Wu, from *The Tomahawks*.

PS Thanks for coming to talk to us, Suzie. How long are you going to stay (you / stay) in London?

Suzie For about ten days.

PS <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / play) any concerts in South Korea?

Suzie No, we <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

PS Really? What <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / do) in Seoul?

Suzie I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some Korean musicians this weekend.

PS Wow. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / record) your next CD with them?

Suzie Yes, we <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

PS I can't wait to hear it! And <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / continue) recording when you go back to the U.S?

Suzie No, we <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We're going to have a vacation.

PS Well, have a good time, Suzie. And thanks for talking to *Pop Star Magazine*.

## Verb + infinitive / -ing form

6 Complete the sentences in the questionnaire. Check (✓) the sentences which are true for you.

### What kind of person are you?

- 1 I don't mind waiting (wait) in line.
- 2 I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (make) decisions quickly.
- 3 I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ (help) my parents with the housework.
- 4 I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ (write) stories.
- 5 I hope \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very rich one day.
- 6 I love \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) other people to do things.
- 7 I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework

## Round-up

7 Complete the text with *be going to*, the infinitive with *to*, or the *-ing* forms of the verbs.

## THE SECRETS OF SUCCESS

As teenagers we have to make a lot of decisions. What subjects are we going to study? What job <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (we / do)? These are really important decisions and we don't want <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make) any mistakes! Here are Teen Life Magazine's secrets for a successful future.

### Think about your personality

Personality helps you to decide what job is right for you. People with outgoing personalities love <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) lots of people in their jobs, but other people prefer <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) quieter, more creative jobs. Would you like <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a doctor, an engineer, or an artist? What do you really like <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do)?

### Try something new

Most young people enjoy <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in front of the TV or a computer in their free time, but why not do something different sometimes? People with lots of hobbies and interests are usually more successful.

### Don't forget your family and friends

Ambition is good because it helps us to work hard but very ambitious people can become selfish. We all hope <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) rich and famous one day, but we mustn't forget our family and friends!

8 Read the text again. Then answer the questions.

What important decisions do teenagers have to make according to the article?

*Teenagers have to decide what subjects they are going to study and what they are going to do.*

- 1 Why is it important to think about your personality when you are choosing a job?
- 2 What do outgoing people like doing?
- 3 What do most young people enjoy doing in their free time?
- 4 What does the article say about people with lots of hobbies?
- 5 Why is ambition both a good and a bad thing?



## Inviting people to do things

### 1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

are you free    do you want to  
how about going    I'd like to see  
I love going    I'm busy  
let's do that    would you like (x2)

- 1  
Mark **Are you free** on Friday?  
Linda Yes, I am.  
Mark 1 \_\_\_\_\_ to have dinner together?  
Linda I'd love to, but I can't.  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ until 8 p.m.  
Mark 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies at 9 p.m?  
Linda Sure. 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies.  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ the new James Bond movie.  
Mark Cool. I love action movies.
- 2  
Jeff 6 \_\_\_\_\_ to play tennis?  
Maria No, thanks! I hate playing tennis! And it's going to rain! Look at the sky!  
Jeff OK. 7 \_\_\_\_\_ watch a DVD at my house?  
Maria Cool. 8 \_\_\_\_\_!

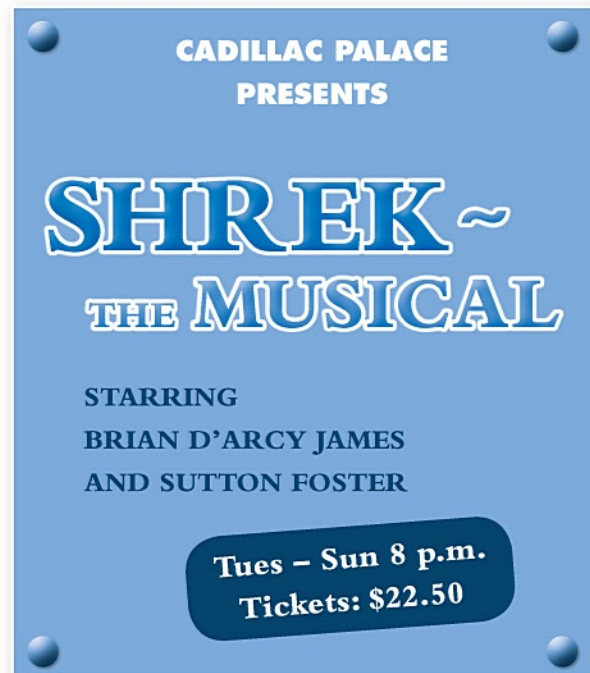
### 2 Match the questions and answers.

- 1 Are you free on Saturday evening?  e
- 2 Would you like to go to a karaoke club on Friday afternoon?
- 3 Do you want to go to *The Rivals* concert on Tuesday evening?
- 4 How about staying at home this evening?
- 5 Do you want to go to the basketball game on Saturday morning?
- 6 Would you like to go shopping with me after school?
- a No, thanks. I hate rock music.  
b Cool. We can watch TV or play computer games.  
c No, thanks. I'm not a big sports fan.  
d Cool! Let's go to the shopping mall near Millennium Park.  
e No, I'm not. I'm going to a Carla's birthday party.  
f Yes, I'd love to – but I'm not a very good singer!

### 3 Write the dialogues in the correct order.

- 1
- Are you free on Tuesday night?  1
  - It starts at 8:30 p.m. Let's meet at my house at 7:30 p.m.
  - I have an extra ticket for the *Metro* concert. Would you like to go?
  - Yes, I am. Why?
  - Sure. I love their new CD. What time does the concert start?
- 2
- I'm sorry, I can't. I have a piano lesson at 4 p.m.
  - Sure. I'd love to.
  - What time does it finish?
  - Would you like to go to the movies on Saturday afternoon?  1
  - I'm meeting Greg and Ally for a pizza after the movie. Do you want to come?
  - It finishes at 5 p.m.

### 4 Look at the poster. Then complete the dialogue.



- A Are you free on 1 \_\_\_\_\_?
- B Yes, I am.
- A Would you like to 2 \_\_\_\_\_?
- B Sure! 3 \_\_\_\_\_.
- A It starts at 4 \_\_\_\_\_ at the Cadillac Palace.
- B How much are the tickets?
- A 5 \_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

1 Read the article. Find the name of two volunteer organizations.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_



## Volunteers in the U.S.

Every year thousands of American teenagers work as volunteers. They work with animals, protect the environment or help people in poor areas of the United States. In return, they learn important new skills. We spoke to two teenage volunteers.



"When I first came to Pine Ridge, I was very surprised. The houses in Pine Ridge are very old and many of them don't have electricity or water! A lot of people here don't have jobs so they're very poor. We're helping to repair their houses and we're painting the local school. I think I was a bit selfish before I volunteered to work with *Schools Together*. I knew there were many poor people in America, but I never really thought about the problem. I'm meeting lots of really nice kids in Pine Ridge and I'm making some important decisions about my life too. I think I'm going to study medicine when I'm older and become a doctor."

**Todd Billings, 14**

"I'm doing voluntary work twice a week with a group called *Green Space*. They're working in the south side of the city and they're going to change some really ugly places into parks. I'm planting trees and picking up trash, painting walls, and doing lots of other things to help them.

I was a bit shy before I started, but now I'm meeting really nice kids from all over the city and I'm making some new friends. It's good fun, but we're all very tired at the end of the day and then I have to cycle home!"

**Tina Martin, 14**

2 Write the correct name *Todd* or *Tina*. Which volunteer ...?

- |                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 was very surprised at first         | <u>Todd</u> |
| 2 repairs houses                      | _____       |
| 3 volunteers twice a week             | _____       |
| 4 works in the south side of the city | _____       |
| 5 is very tired at the end of the day | _____       |
| 6 is going to be a doctor             | _____       |
| 7 was a bit selfish                   | _____       |
| 8 cycles to the project               | _____       |

## Writing

3 Imagine you are doing voluntary work. Answer the questions.

Then use your answers to write a short account of your experience as a volunteer.

- What voluntary work are you doing?
- Where is the project?
- How do you get to the project? (walk, cycle, bus, train ...)
- What is difficult, fun, or interesting about the job?
- Do you have to get up early / work hard?
- What are you going to do tomorrow?

### Volunteer now!

We have spaces on the following projects:

- Food Bank: Collect food for poor people in your neighborhood
- Animal Shelter: Take care of rescued animals
- Hospital Friends: Visit sick children in hospital

# 4

## Grammar rules

### will: future

#### Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	
Full form	Short form
I <b>will</b> leave	I'll leave
you <b>will</b> leave	you'll leave
he <b>will</b> leave	he'll leave
she <b>will</b> leave	she'll leave
it <b>will</b> leave	it'll leave
we <b>will</b> leave	we'll leave
you <b>will</b> leave	you'll leave
they <b>will</b> leave	they'll leave

Subject + | *will / 'll* | + base form of the verb

Negative	
Full form	Short form
I <b>will not</b> leave	I <b>won't</b> leave
you <b>will not</b> leave	you <b>won't</b> leave
he <b>will not</b> leave	he <b>won't</b> leave
she <b>will not</b> leave	she <b>won't</b> leave
it <b>will not</b> leave	it <b>won't</b> leave
we <b>will not</b> leave	we <b>won't</b> leave
you <b>will not</b> leave	you <b>won't</b> leave
they <b>will not</b> leave	they <b>won't</b> leave

Subject + | *will not / won't* | + base form of the verb

#### • We use *will* to:

- **predict or suppose.**  
It'll be great. The weather **will be** fine.
- **talk about future facts.**  
They'll arrive on the 11 a.m. bus.
- **express decisions taken at the moment.**  
It's raining. I'll lend you my umbrella.
- **offer to do something at the moment or later.**  
Don't worry, I'll help you with the math homework.
- **make a request in the second person singular or plural.**  
Will you help me with these heavy bags?

### will: future

#### Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	
Will I leave?	Will it leave?
Will you leave?	Will we leave?
Will he leave?	Will you leave?
Will she leave?	Will they leave?

*Will* | + subject | + base form of the verb

Short answers	
Affirmative	Negative
Yes, I will.	No, I won't.
Yes, you will.	No, you won't.
Yes, he will.	No, he won't.
Yes, she will.	No, she won't.
Yes, it will.	No, it won't.
Yes, we will.	No, we won't.
Yes, you will.	No, you won't.
Yes, they will.	No, they won't.

*Yes,* | + subject + | *will.*  
*No,* | | *won't.*

### *will / be going to*

1 We can talk about the future using three different verb forms: *will* + base form of the verb, *be going to* + base form of the verb, and present progressive.

2 We use *will* + base form of the verb to talk about:

- **things we cannot control.**  
I think it'll be sunny tomorrow.  
Airplanes **will fly** faster in the future.
- **when we decide to do something at the moment of speaking.**  
We'll meet you at the bus stop.  
I'll call you back in a minute.

3 We use *be going to* + base form of the verb to talk about:

- **intentions, things we have already decided to do.**  
I'm going to read this new book.  
We're going to go swimming in the ocean on

vacation.

- **something in the present that tells us something about the future.**

There's a lot of traffic. We're **going to be** late for the bus.

Look at those black clouds. It's **going to rain**.

- 4 We use the present progressive to talk about things that we arrange to do in the future.**

"What **are you doing** tonight?"

"I'm **having** dinner with Laura."

## First conditional

### Affirmative

If we study, we'll pass our exams.

Hypothesis	Consequence
If we study,	we'll pass our exams.

**If** + subject + *simple present*,  
subject + *will / 'll* + base form of the verb

### Negative

If you don't play, the team **won't** win.

Hypothesis	Consequence
If you don't play,	the team <b>won't</b> win.

**If +** subject + *simple present*,  
subject + *will not / won't* + base form of the verb

- 1 We use the first conditional to talk about future situations that the speaker thinks are probable.**

If she leaves before ten o'clock, she'll catch the bus.

*(The speaker thinks it is probable that she will leave before ten o'clock and then catch the bus.)*

- 2 We make first conditional sentences with two parts: an *if*-clause (the hypothesis) and a main clause (the consequence).**

- 3 We make the *if*-clause with *if* + subject + the *simple present* form of the verb + comma (,).**  
If we see Victoria, we will tell her.

- 4 We make the main clause with subject + *will / won't* + base form of the verb.**  
If we see Victoria, we **will** tell her.

- 5 We can put the *if*-clause at the beginning or end of a sentence. When the *if*-clause is at the beginning of a sentence, we put a comma (,) after it.**

If the weather **is** nice, we'll go out.

We'll go out if the weather **is** nice.

- 6 We can also use imperatives in the main clause when we want to give orders.**

**Stop** working if you're tired.

**Don't wear** those shoes if you want to go walking in the mountains.

## Word list

### The weather

cloudy \_\_\_\_\_  
foggy \_\_\_\_\_  
raining \_\_\_\_\_  
snowing \_\_\_\_\_  
sunny \_\_\_\_\_  
windy \_\_\_\_\_

### Temperature

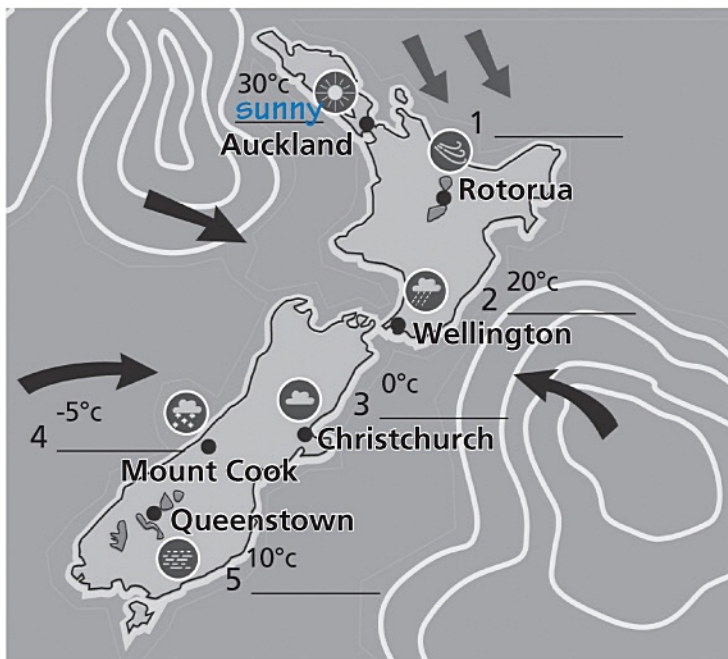
cold \_\_\_\_\_  
freezing \_\_\_\_\_  
hot \_\_\_\_\_  
mild \_\_\_\_\_  
warm \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## The weather

1 Complete the map with the words in the box.

cloudy foggy raining  
snowing sunny windy



2 Match the cities to the adjectives.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| 1 Wellington   | a freezing |
| 2 Queenstown   | b hot      |
| 3 Christchurch | c cold     |
| 4 Mount Cook   | d warm     |
| 5 Auckland     | e mild     |

## Grammar

**will: future**  
Affirmative and negative

3 Choose the correct answers.

Oh no! That was Mom's favorite clock! She won't / will be happy when she comes home!

- They won't / will win the game. They're much better than the other team.
- We won't / 'll have a really good time this weekend. We're going to the beach.
- Don't worry, you 'll / won't fail the science test. You're good at science.
- Bianca will / won't like this music. She doesn't listen to hip-hop.
- Please tell me your secret. I will / won't tell anyone. I promise!

**will: future**  
Interrogative and short answers

4 Complete the dialogues with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

come do enjoy give stay take win

- A Will they win the music competition?  
B No, I don't think they'll win the music competition. They're not very good.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Yes, he will. Paulo always takes his vacation in January.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B No. Helen won't come to the party because she's busy.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B No, he won't enjoy the movie. Jim's scared of horror movies.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Yes, the teacher will give us a test today.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B No, my parents won't stay at my uncle's house. They're going to reserve a hotel.
- A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Yes, Laura will do her school project. She's very hard-working.

**will / be going to**

5 Complete the sentences with **will** and **be going to**.

I 'm going to call Lilly this afternoon. Maybe she will come to the park with us.

- Sam \_\_\_\_\_ join a band. Maybe he \_\_\_\_\_ be famous one day.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ invite Laura and Chloe to our house, but I don't think Laura \_\_\_\_\_ come – she never comes.
- We hope the weather \_\_\_\_\_ be nice this weekend because we \_\_\_\_\_ have a picnic.
- My parents \_\_\_\_\_ take us to Hollywood this summer. Maybe we \_\_\_\_\_ see a movie star!
- I \_\_\_\_\_ go to track and field practice now so I \_\_\_\_\_ be very tired tonight.

## First conditional

### 6 Match the sentence halves.



- 1 You'll have an accident ...
- 2 Danny will come with us tomorrow ...
- 3 Will your parents be angry ...
- 4 It's 2°C today. If you go out in a T-shirt, ...
- 5 Will you go to the park tomorrow ...
- 6 I'll help you with your English homework ...

- a if he isn't busy.
- b** if you ride your bike like that.
- c if the weather is nice?
- d if you help me with my science project.
- e you'll be cold.
- f if you fail the exam?

### 7 Rewrite the sentences. Use the correct forms of the first conditional.

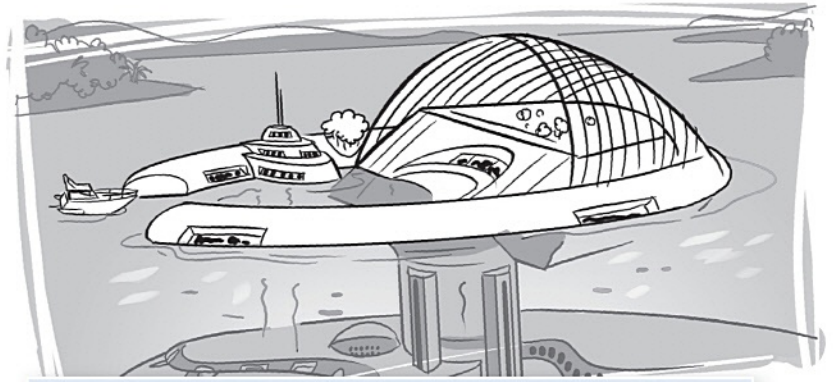
I don't want to be late. I must catch the eight o'clock bus.

If I don't catch the eight o'clock bus, I'll be late.

- 1 Don't skateboard in the street. You'll have an accident.  
If you skateboard \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Work hard and pass the exam.  
If you \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Don't watch that horror movie. You won't sleep very well.  
If \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Don't eat a lot of candy because you won't have nice teeth.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I hope the weather will be good tomorrow because I want to go to the beach.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Round-up

### 8 Read the text. Choose the correct answers.



### Water world

Scientists predict that, in the next 100 years, the climate will get / is getting warmer. If that <sup>1</sup>will happen / happens, sea levels <sup>2</sup>rise / will rise. This <sup>3</sup>will / won't flood large areas of the world. At the same time the world's population <sup>4</sup>will grow / growing to ten billion people. So where <sup>5</sup>we will / will we all live?

Well, what about under the ocean? At the moment builders are building an underwater hotel near Dubai. *The Hydropolis* <sup>6</sup>will be / is the first underwater hotel in the world! The rooms will <sup>7</sup>have / has transparent walls so that you can watch the fish! There certainly won't be any underwater houses, schools, or stores in the near future. But, if the climate <sup>8</sup>will continue / continues to change, experts think that life under the ocean <sup>9</sup>will become / becomes a real possibility.

### 9 Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false statements.

Sea levels will rise because of global cooling.

False. Sea levels will rise because of global warming.

- 1 The world's population will be smaller in 100 years time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Builders are building schools and stores under the ocean at the moment.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *The Hydropolis* will be an underwater hotel.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 There will be underwater schools in the near future.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Life under the ocean won't become a real possibility.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Making offers

### 1 Complete the dialogues with the phrases in the box.

hot I'll drive I'll get I'll switch on  
I'll make ~~oh no!~~ thanks

- 1 A **Oh no!** It's going to rain and I don't have an umbrella!  
B Don't worry, <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you home  
A That's very kind of you, but it isn't far. I can walk.  
B OK, <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you an umbrella.  
A OK. Thanks.
- 2 A It's <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in here.  
B Yes, it is. <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the air conditioning.  
A Great. <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A I'm really hungry!  
B There's some cheese in the refrigerator.  
<sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you a sandwich if you want.  
A Oh yes, please. Thanks.

### 2 Complete the dialogues with the words and phrases in the box.

carry them for you great help you  
~~lend you some~~ make you a cup of tea  
please thanks that's kind of you

- 1 A Oh no! I don't have any money! I can't pay for the bus.  
B I'll **lend you some** until tomorrow.  
A <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_! Thanks.
- 2 A I'm thirsty! Is there any orange juice?  
B No, but I'll <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ if you want.  
A No, <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. I don't drink tea.
- 3 A These shopping bags are heavy!  
B I'll <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.  
A <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ but I have my car with me. It's over there!
- 4 A I don't understand this math problem.  
B I'm good at math. I'll <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ later if you want.  
A Yes, <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Thanks.

### 3 Complete the dialogues with I'll and the words in the box.

buy / tickets get / the chessboard  
go / store make / beds  
~~open / window~~ tell / them

- A It's hot in here.  
B **I'll open a window.**  
A Thanks.
- 1 A Let's go to the Weezer concert next week.  
B OK \_\_\_\_\_.  
A Great! Thanks.
- 2 A The boys' room is a mess!  
B \_\_\_\_\_.  
A Oh, yes, please. Thanks.
- 3 A We need some milk.  
B OK, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A That's OK. I can go later.
- 4 A Oh no! We forgot to invite Matt and Sara to the party. Will they be at school tomorrow?  
B Yes, I think so. \_\_\_\_\_ about it.  
A OK. Thanks.
- 5 A I'm bored!  
B Let's play a game. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A No, thanks. That's boring, too!

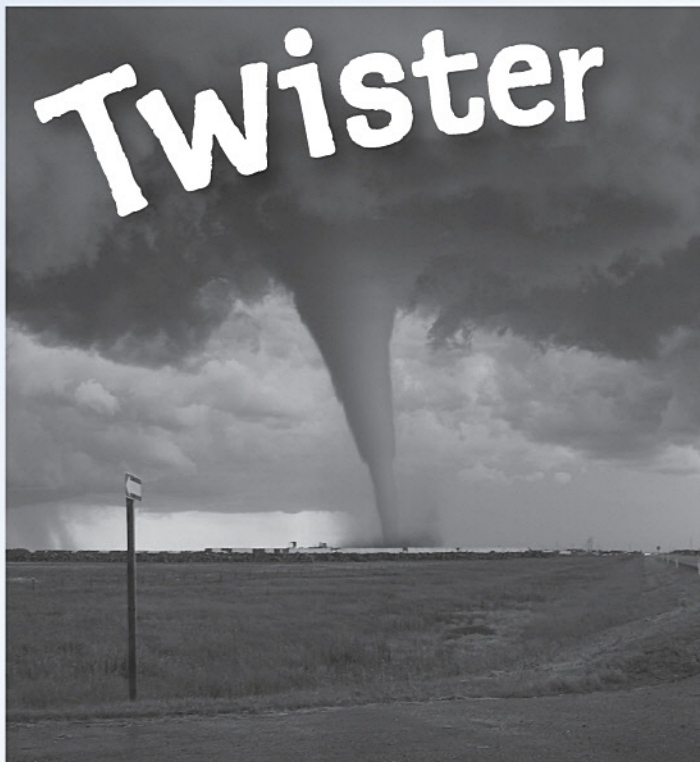
### 4 Use the information to write short dialogues.

- A is cold  
B offers to make her a hot drink  
A accepts the offer  
A **I'm cold.**  
B **I'll make you a hot drink if you like.**  
A **Yes, please. Thanks.**
- 1 A says there's nothing on TV  
B offers to get a DVD from the video store  
A accepts the offer
- 2 A is hungry  
B offers to make a snack  
A refuses the offer and says she'll wait for lunch
- 3 A has a dentist's appointment and won't be at school tomorrow morning  
B offers to tell the teacher  
A accepts the offer

## Reading

## 1 Match the titles to the paragraphs.

- a Find a safe place   b Watch the weather   c What if you are outside?



**T**ornadoes (or “twisters”) are the strongest winds on earth. They can occur in most parts of the world, but are most common in the U.S. in “Tornado Alley”. The wind speed inside a tornado can be over 500 kilometers an hour. It is difficult to predict when or where tornadoes will happen, but it is possible to survive them. Here is a short guide.

## Surviving tornadoes

## 1 \_\_\_\_\_

TV weather reports will tell you if there’s tornado weather in your area. Unfortunately, we only know a tornado is going to happen when it touches the ground. Most tornadoes happen between 3 p.m. and 7 p.m., so watch the sky at these times.

## 2 \_\_\_\_\_

Prepare a tornado shelter in your house. This can be any downstairs room with strong walls and no windows. When a tornado comes, hide in this room. A tornado is very loud so you will hear it before it arrives. Don’t leave the shelter when the sound stops. Stay there for 30 minutes in case the tornado returns.

## 3 \_\_\_\_\_

It is terrifying to be outside in a tornado, but you’ll probably survive if you don’t panic. Never try to run when the tornado arrives because it can move very fast. Flying objects will hit you if you stand up or run, so stop and lie down. If you are in a car when a tornado hits, you will be safer outside the car. Tornadoes can pick up a car and objects can come through the windows. Tell your parents to stop the car, then get out and lie down.



## 2 Read the text again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What are twisters?
- 2 Why is it a good idea to watch the TV weather reports?
- 3 When do most tornadoes happen?
- 4 What kind of room is a good tornado shelter?
- 5 Why mustn’t you try to run away from a tornado?
- 6 Why is it a bad idea to stay in a car?

## Writing

## 3 Write a short text about the weather in your country. Include the following information:

- what the weather is like in summer and in winter
- what extreme weather conditions sometimes happens
- when extreme weather usually happens
- when and where the last extreme weather event happened



## Present perfect Affirmative

Full form	Short form
I have won	I've won
you have won	you've won
he has won	he's won
she has won	she's won
it has won	it's won
we have won	we've won
you have won	you've won
they have won	they've won

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{have ('ve)} \\ \textit{has ('s)} \end{array} \right|$  + past participle

**1 We make the present perfect with the simple present form of the auxiliary verb *have* + the past participle of the main verb.**

They **have bought** a new computer.

**2 We usually use the short forms of the present perfect in spoken and informal written English.**

He's **come** to the movie theater with his sister.

**3 We use the present perfect to talk about:**

- **the present result of a past action.**  
I've **finished** my homework. I can watch TV now.
- **experiences in our life without saying when they happened.**  
I've **been** to Canada.

## Present perfect Negative

Full form	Short form
I have not won	I haven't won
you have not won	you haven't won
he has not won	he hasn't won
she has not won	she hasn't won
it has not won	it hasn't won
we have not won	we haven't won
you have not won	you haven't won
they have not won	they haven't won

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{have not (haven't)} \\ \textit{has not (hasn't)} \end{array} \right|$  + past participle

**1 We make the present perfect with the simple present form of the auxiliary verb *have* + *not* + the past participle of the main verb.**

We **have not washed** the dishes.

**2 We usually use the short forms of the present perfect in spoken and informal written English.**

You **haven't switched** off the light.

## Past participles

**1 We make the past participle of regular verbs by adding *-ed* to the base form of the verb.**

Regular verbs		
Base form	Simple past	Past participle
finish	finished	finished
play	played	played
watch	watched	watched

**2 Remember the spelling variations:**

- **when the verb ends in *-e*, we only add *-d*.**  
live – lived
- **when the verb ends in a vowel and then a consonant, we double the last consonant and then add *-ed*.**  
stop – stopped                      plan – planned
- **when the verb ends in a vowel and then the letter *-y*, we replace *-y* with an *-i* and then add *-ed*.**  
study – studied

**3 The past participle of irregular verbs changes for each verb. There are no rules to form the past participles. Look at the irregular verb list on the inside back cover and try to learn them.**

## been / gone

1 We use the present perfect of *be* (*have been / has been*) to say that someone went to a place and then returned.

Alan **has been** to China. He really liked it.  
(Alan went to China. Now he is at home.)

2 We use the present perfect of *go* (*have gone / has gone*) to say that someone went to a place and they are still there.

Maria **has gone** to the park. She'll come back soon.  
(Maria went to the park. She is at the park now.)

## Present perfect Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	
Have I won?	Has it won?
Have you won?	Have we won?
Has he won?	Have you won?
Has she won?	Have they won?

*Have / Has* | + subject pronoun + | past participle

Short answers	
Affirmative	Negative
Yes, I have.	No, I haven't.
Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Yes, he has.	No, he hasn't.
Yes, she has.	No, she hasn't.
Yes, it has.	No, it hasn't.
Yes, we have.	No, we haven't.
Yes, you have.	No, you haven't.
Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

Yes, | + subject pronoun + | have / has.  
No, | | haven't / hasn't.

- We make the present perfect interrogative with *Have / Has* followed by the subject pronoun and the past participle of the verb.  
"Have you traveled by airplane?" "Yes, I have."  
"Has Zoe done a parachute jump?" "No, she hasn't."

## ever / never

1 *Ever* means "in your life". We use *ever* in interrogative sentences between the subject pronoun and the past participle.

Have you **ever** visited Chicago?  
Has she **ever** eaten Greek food?

2 *Never* means "not in your life". We use *never* in affirmative sentences between *have / has* and the past participle.

They've **never** met a famous person.  
He's **never** visited Colombia.

## Present perfect / Simple past

1 The present perfect and simple past do not have the same uses or meaning.

2 We use the simple past to talk about a completed past action. We also usually use the simple past with a past time expression which says when something happened (for example, *yesterday, a year ago, last Monday, in 2008*).

I went to Mexico last summer.

3 We use the present perfect to talk about the present result of a past action, or about an experience that happened in our lifetime, but we do not specify when it happened.

I **have had** lunch. I can't go swimming now.  
Have you **ever been** to Tokyo?

## Word list

### Exciting experiences

- do a parachute jump \_\_\_\_\_
- fly in an airplane \_\_\_\_\_
- go camping \_\_\_\_\_
- go scuba diving \_\_\_\_\_
- meet a famous person \_\_\_\_\_
- ride a roller coaster \_\_\_\_\_
- stay in a hotel \_\_\_\_\_
- travel abroad \_\_\_\_\_
- watch a soccer game \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## Exciting experiences

1 Match the sentences with the phrases in the box.

do a parachute jump   go scuba diving  
ride a roller coaster  
stay in a hotel   travel abroad  
watch a soccer game

Don't look down when you jump out of the airplane!

do a parachute jump

- We saw some amazing fish.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We went to Mexico last summer – we caught a ferry from Cancún to Isla Mujeres. It was great.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I was really scared when we went fast. We traveled at 70 km/h!  
\_\_\_\_\_
- It was great when my team scored a goal!  
\_\_\_\_\_
- There was a swimming pool and the food was great. We were there five nights.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

Present perfect  
Affirmative and negative

2 Complete the sentences with the correct present perfect forms of the verbs in the box.

buy   clean   not come  
not have   not use   see   start

Sally has bought a new MP3 player. It's cool!

- Matt's hungry. He \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.
- You've been on the Internet all evening and I \_\_\_\_\_ the computer all day!
- I \_\_\_\_\_ that movie. It's great!
- We're late! The concert \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ayame and Hayate \_\_\_\_\_ to school today. Are they on vacation?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ my room. Can I go to Jay's house?

## been / gone

3 Rewrite the sentences with present perfect and *been / gone*.



England is a really nice place, but I'm happy to be back home.

I've been to England.

- The movie was exciting, but the movie theater seats were dirty.  
We \_\_\_\_\_.
- Lucy's at Maria's house. She'll be back later.  
Lucy \_\_\_\_\_.
- My cousin Ricardo studies in Boston.  
Ricardo \_\_\_\_\_.
- Look at this e-mail. My brother's having a good time in Rome.  
My brother \_\_\_\_\_.
- What did you buy at the shopping mall?  
You \_\_\_\_\_.

Present perfect  
Interrogative and short answers

4 Complete the dialogue with questions and short answers.

- Mom (you / lose / something?) Have you lost something?
- Angie Yes, I have. (you / see / my MP3 player?)  
1 \_\_\_\_\_
- Mom No, 2 \_\_\_\_\_. (you / leave / it at school?) 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- Angie No, 4 \_\_\_\_\_. I saw it this afternoon.
- Mom (you / look / in your room?) 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- Angie Yes, 6 \_\_\_\_\_. It's not there.
- Mom (you / ask / Dad?) 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- Angie No, 8 \_\_\_\_\_. (he / come / home?) 9 \_\_\_\_\_
- Mom Yes, 10 \_\_\_\_\_. He's in the yard.
- Angie Hi, Dad. (you / seen / my MP3 player?)  
11 \_\_\_\_\_
- Dad Er, yes, 12 \_\_\_\_\_.  
Sorry Angie. Do you want it back?

**ever / never**

**5** Complete the dialogue with present perfect and *ever* or *never*.

Mi-Cha Hi. Are you an actor?  
 Dan No, I'm a stunt man. I'm going to jump from that train.  
 Mi-Cha Really? Have you ever jumped (you / jump) from a moving train before?



Dan No, I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) this stunt before.  
 Mi-Cha <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / be) scared before a stunt?  
 Dan No, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) very scared because I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an accident.  
 Mi-Cha You're very brave. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / fall) off a horse?  
 Dan Yeah, lots of times ... in cowboy movies.  
 Mi-Cha Wow! <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / jump) out of an airplane?  
 Dan Yes, I have. I was a skydiver in *Live too fast*.  
 Mi-Cha The Nathan Harker movie? Cool! <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / meet) him?  
 Dan Of course. Nathan and I are good friends.

**Present perfect / Simple past**

**6** Complete the dialogue with the correct forms of the present perfect or simple past.

A Have you ever seen (you / ever / see) Mikey Sno in concert?  
 B Yes, I have. He came (come) to Da Nang last year.  
 1 A <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / call) Tom today?  
 B Yes, I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (call) him about thirty minutes ago.  
 2 A Jake <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / be) at school this morning and it's nearly lunchtime. Do you know where he is?  
 B Yes, he's in the U.S. with his family. He <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) yesterday.  
 3 A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you / ask) Mrs. Asari about the school trip?  
 B No, I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to her classroom at eleven o'clock, but she wasn't there.

**Round-up**

**7** Complete the text with the correct forms of the present perfect or simple past.

**Man vs. Wild**

by Luke Walters  
 My favorite celebrity is Bear Grylls. He's an adventurer and an explorer. He has been (be) all over the world and he <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) some amazing things! He <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (write) three books about his adventures and now he presents a TV series about how to survive in the wild.  
 Grylls <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) born in the U.K. in 1974. He <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) to sail a boat when he was very young. As a child he also <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (love) climbing and he became famous when he <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) Mount Everest at the age of 23!  
 Grylls <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the freezing Arctic and the hot rainforests of the Amazon. On his TV show, *Man vs. Wild*, he <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (try) a lot of exciting things. Last year he <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) hundreds of parachute jumps, <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (fight) an alligator and <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) snakes! I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (never / do) anything exciting, but I'd like to travel one day. I always watch Bear Grylls on TV and I've learned a lot. I'm almost ready for adventure!



**8** Write questions. Then answer the questions.

Where / be / Bear Grylls / born?  
Where was Bear Grylls born? He was born in the U.K.

- 1 Why / he / become / famous?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What incredible places / he / visit?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What / he / do / on his TV show last year?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Luke / ever do / anything exciting?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Booking an activity

### 1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

and are you all over fifteen? can I help you?  
have you been here before?  
how many people are there? is that OK?  
what's your name and cell number  
when do you want to book the lane for?

Receptionist Hello, Brooklyn Bowl. Can I help you?

Rick Yes, please. I'd like to book a bowling lane.

Receptionist 1 \_\_\_\_\_

Rick No, I haven't.

Receptionist OK, 2 \_\_\_\_\_, please?

Rick It's Rick Nelson and my cell is 434-555-6328.

Receptionist And 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Rick Saturday at 3 p.m., please.

Receptionist OK – Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> at 3 p.m. 4 \_\_\_\_\_

Rick Three.

Receptionist 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Rick Yes, we are.

Receptionist That'll be \$30 for the lane and \$4 each for shoe rental. 6 \_\_\_\_\_

Rick Yeah, that's fine.

Receptionist OK. I've booked that for you.

Rick That's great. Thanks. Bye.

### 2 Write the dialogue in the correct order.

B Twelve.

A OK – Tuesday 22<sup>nd</sup> December at 11:30 a.m. How many people are there?

B Yes, it's Pedro Williams and my cell number is 786-350-4911.

A OK. Can I have your name and cell number, please?

A That'll be \$60 for the court.

B For 11:30 a.m. tomorrow.

A Hello. Can I help you?  1

B OK. Thanks. Bye.

B Yes, we are.

A Thank you, Pedro. And when do you want the basketball court for?

B Yes, please. I'd like to book a basketball court, please.

A That's fine. And are you all over thirteen?

### 3 Read your friend's note. Then complete the dialogue with the receptionist and answer the questions.

Hey there!  
There's a new sports center in Hudson Street.  
Let's go and see it! I'm free at 2 p.m. on Saturday.  
Why don't we play tennis?  
Leo  
P.S. If you're free, can you book the tennis court?

Receptionist Hello. Can I help you?

You Yes, please. I'd like to book a tennis court.

Receptionist Have you been here before?

You 1 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist OK. What's your name and cell number, please?

You 2 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist When do you want to book the court for?

You 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist How many people are there?

You 4 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist Are you both over fourteen?

You 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist OK, that'll be \$30 for an hour. Is that OK?

You 6 \_\_\_\_\_

Receptionist OK. I've booked that for you. Goodbye. Have a nice day.

### 4 You want to go skateboarding. Look at the advertisement. Decide what time you'd like to go and who you'd like to go with. Call the skatepark to book a time. Write the dialogue you have with the receptionist.

#### Avalon Skatepark

Opening times: Sunday – Thursday 11 a.m. – 8:30 p.m.  
Saturday 11 a.m. – 10:30 p.m.

Phone: 843-750-7625

1790, 29<sup>th</sup> Avenue East, Myrtle Beach, SC 29576

Receptionist Hello, Avalon Skatepark. Can I help you?

You Yes, I'd like to ...

## Reading

1 Read the webpage. Then complete the chart.

What?	<a href="#">Teen survival camp</a>
For who?	1 _____
Where?	2 _____
When?	3 _____
How long?	4 _____

2 Read the webpage again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 How many survival camps has Isaac been on?
- 2 What has he learned to do?
- 3 What did he think of the night walk that he did last year?
- 4 When did Holly go on the survival camp?
- 5 What was her favorite activity?

# SURVIVOR

HOME CAMPS ABOUT US FAQs BLOG Search

## Teen survival camps

Have you ever slept outdoors?

Have you ever camped without food or water?

Have you ever looked for food in a forest?

If you're between the age of fourteen and seventeen and you're looking for adventure, you'll find it at our Teen Survival Camps. The two-week camps take place every July and August in the Siskiyou Mountains in northern California. We take small groups of students (no more than eight people per group) and teach them basic survival skills. Each camp is full of fun, excitement, and experiences that you have never had before!

### What students have said about the Teen Survival Camp:

"I've been on two survival camps and they've changed my life! I've never done anything so cool before! I've learned to make a fire, build a camp, and find food in the wild. I've even learned how to use the sun to get clean water! Last year we went on a night walk and we had to cross a forest without a map. It was awesome! You have to try it!" *Isaac, 17*

"It's the best camp I've ever been on and I've never learned so much in two weeks! I only went last month, but I'm already planning to go again next year! The people were great and I loved everything about it. My favorite thing was cooking over the campfire in the evening. Go for it!" *Holly, 16*



## Writing

3 Imagine that you are at the Teen Survival Camp. It's Wednesday evening of the first week. Look at the calendar of events and then write an e-mail to your best friend. Say:

- what you think of the camp
- some of the things you've done so far
- what you did yesterday
- what the people are like
- what the food is like

### This week's events

- Monday**
- a.m. Build the camp site! Choose an area for cooking, sleeping, washing, etc.
  - p.m. look for food in the forest
- Tuesday**
- a.m. Walk to the river and build a raft
  - Learn how to catch fish
  - p.m. Night walk under the stars. Sleep in the forest!
- Wednesday**
- a.m. Learn how to find signs of animals
  - p.m. Learn how to climb mountainous areas

**Present perfect + *already***

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{have ('ve)} \\ \textit{has ('s)} \end{array} \right| + \textit{already} \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{past} \\ \textit{participle} \end{array} \right|$

- 1 We use *already* to talk about something happening sooner than we expected.**  
I've **already** seen Valeria today.
- 2 We usually use *already* in affirmative sentences.**  
We've **already** told them to arrive at 8 p.m.
- 3 *Already* comes between the auxiliary verb (*have / has*) and the past participle.**  
She's **already** paid for her pizza.

**Present perfect + *yet***

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{have not} \\ \textit{(haven't)} \\ \textit{has not} \\ \textit{(hasn't)} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{past} \\ \textit{participle} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{yet} \end{array} \right|$

*Have / Has*  $\left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{subject} \\ \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{past} \\ \textit{participle} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{yet} \end{array} \right|$

- 1 We use *yet* to talk about something we are expecting to happen.**  
They **haven't** moved into the new house **yet**.
- 2 We usually use *yet* in negative and interrogative sentences.**  
Monica **hasn't** taken out the trash **yet**.  
Has your brother **finished** high school **yet**?
- 3 *Yet* comes at the end of a sentence or question.**  
Have you **been** to see Nick at the hospital **yet**?

**Present perfect + *just***

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{have ('ve)} \\ \textit{has ('s)} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{just} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{past} \\ \textit{participle} \end{array} \right|$

*Have / Has*  $\left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{subject} \\ \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{just} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} + \textit{past} \\ \textit{participle} \end{array} \right|$

- 1 We use *just* to talk about something that happened a very short time ago.**  
I've **just** received an e-mail from Ben.
- 2 We use *just* in affirmative and interrogative sentences.**  
Clare **has just** called.  
Has Tom **just** left?
- 3 *Just* comes before the past participle in affirmative and interrogative sentences.**  
Have Simon and Emma **just had** lunch?

## Present perfect + *for* / *since*

1 We use the present perfect with *for* or *since* to describe an action which started in the past and continues until the present.

*Dragon Tamers* has been on the bestseller list for six months.

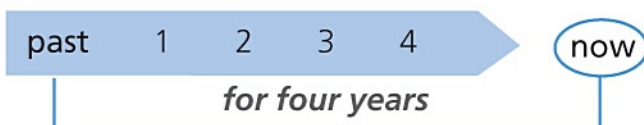
I've known Mateo for two years.

I've been a writer since I was fifteen years old.

She has been my best friend since we started high school.

2 We use *for* with a period of time. We use *for* to talk about the length of the period of time.

They've worked in Fortaleza for four years.



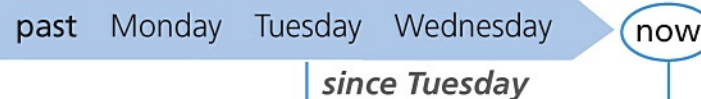
They've worked in Fortaleza for four years.

3 We can use the following time expressions with *for* in:

- ***for* + number of days** – *for two days*  
Sal's gone to the city for two days.
- ***for* + number of weeks** – *for three weeks*  
I've been on vacation for three weeks.
- ***for* + number of months** – *for eight months*  
We've had a pet dog for eight months.
- ***for* + number of years** – *for ten years*  
They've lived in Illinois for ten years.
- ***for* + expression**  
I've been in Manaus for a while.  
(A short time, but we don't know exactly how long.)  
I've been in Manaus for a long time.  
(A long time, but we don't know exactly how long.)

4 We use *since* with a point in time. We use *since* to talk about the beginning of a period of time.

We've been in Cali since Tuesday.



We've been in Cali since Tuesday.

5 We can use the following time expressions with *since*:

- ***since* + time** – *since two o'clock*  
I've watched TV since two o'clock.
- ***since* + yesterday** – *since yesterday*  
I haven't seen Vilma since yesterday.
- ***since* + day** – *since Thursday*  
It's rained since Thursday.
- ***since* + month** – *since May*  
We've had a car since May.
- ***since* + year** – *since 2009*  
They've studied English since 2009.

## Word list

### Books

- autobiography \_\_\_\_\_
- biography \_\_\_\_\_
- detective story / crime story \_\_\_\_\_
- fantasy story \_\_\_\_\_
- horror story \_\_\_\_\_
- love story \_\_\_\_\_
- science fiction story \_\_\_\_\_
- spy story \_\_\_\_\_



## Vocabulary

## Books

## 1 Complete the sentences.

I never read **horror** stories. I can't sleep after I read them.

- 1 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ story about aliens from Mars.
- 2 I've read a lot of James Bond \_\_\_\_\_ stories.
- 3 In this \_\_\_\_\_ story, a man robs a bank.
- 4 It's a great \_\_\_\_\_ story about dragons and wizards.
- 5 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ about the life of Nelson Mandela.
- 6 This \_\_\_\_\_ story is very romantic.
- 7 Many famous people have written about their life in an \_\_\_\_\_.

## Grammar

## Present perfect + yet and already

## 2 Complete the dialogues with questions and answers. Use the present perfect and yet.

A **Have you finished your project yet?**  
(you / finish / your project?)

B No, **I haven't started it yet.**  
(I / not / start / it)

- 1 A Erin, \_\_\_\_\_  
(you / send the e-mail to Mary?)  
B No, \_\_\_\_\_  
(I / not / switch on / the computer)
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_  
(Tom / get up?)  
B No, \_\_\_\_\_  
(he / not / wake up)
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_  
(you / buy / the concert tickets?)  
B No. \_\_\_\_\_  
(you / not / give / me the money)
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_  
(they / have / their exam results?)  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
(they / not / see / them)

## 3 Complete the sentences with the present perfect forms of the verbs and already.

I know about the test.

Sofia **has already told** (tell) me.

- 1 That's a really good book. I \_\_\_\_\_ (read) it twice.
- 2 Our homework was easy. We \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) it.
- 3 Kasia doesn't want to see the James Bond movie. She \_\_\_\_\_ (see) it.
- 4 Pedro can tell you all about the museum because he \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) it.
- 5 I'm not going to call Rocio because I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) her an e-mail.
- 6 Why do you want to take another photo of me? You \_\_\_\_\_ (take) three!
- 7 Mom bought my baby brother a new toy, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (break) it.

## 4 Complete the dialogue with yet or already.



- Kris Hi Pao! Oh ... Zorro. I've **already** read that – it's a great book. Do you like it?
- Pao Well, I haven't finished it  
1 \_\_\_\_\_, but it's very exciting.
- Kris How much have you read?
- Pao I've 2 \_\_\_\_\_ finished the first part.
- Kris Has Zorro traveled to Spain  
3 \_\_\_\_\_?
- Pao Yes, he has. He's 4 \_\_\_\_\_ been there and come back to California.
- Kris Has he met Rafael Moncada  
5 \_\_\_\_\_?
- Pao Yes, they've 6 \_\_\_\_\_ had a fight, but Rafael hasn't discovered who Zorro is 7 \_\_\_\_\_ because of his mask. But hey, don't tell me the ending. I haven't read that bit  
8 \_\_\_\_\_!

## Present perfect + just

- 5 Complete the sentences with *just* and the present perfect forms of the verbs in the box.

have leave paint see wash win

- A Are you thirsty?  
 B No, we've just **had** some water.
- 1 A Was that wall always that color?  
 B No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 2 A Is Steve at school?  
 B No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A I can't find my cell phone.  
 B I \_\_\_\_\_ it. It's in the living room.
- 4 A Why are you so happy?  
 B Corinthians \_\_\_\_\_ the game!
- 5 A Why is your hair wet?  
 B I \_\_\_\_\_ it.

## Present perfect + for / since

- 6 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.



Where are you? I've been outside the movie theater **for** an hour.

- 1 We haven't seen Beth \_\_\_\_\_ two months.
- 2 Mick's been on vacation in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ last month.
- 3 She's studied English \_\_\_\_\_ elementary school.
- 4 Kerri has known Andy \_\_\_\_\_ five years.
- 5 I've played tennis \_\_\_\_\_ three years. I love it!
- 6 My sister hasn't spoken to me \_\_\_\_\_ last week when I broke her MP3 player!

## Round-up

- 7 Complete the e-mail with *already*, *yet*, *just*, *for*, or *since*.

Hi, Sue

How are you? I'm sorry I haven't written **for** a few weeks, but I've been very busy. How are things in your new home in Hawaii? Everybody here in Minneapolis has missed you <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you left. Have you started your new school <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? Have you made any new friends? Marcy says you've <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ forgotten all your old friends, but I know that isn't true!

Nothing has changed here in Minneapolis – it's cold and boring as usual! But Becky is really excited at the moment because she's <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ won her black belt in Tae Kwon Do. Becky, Marcy, and I have decided to visit you next summer in Hawaii! We've <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ started planning the trip!

I went to soccer practice last night and all the girls say "Hi!" We haven't won a game <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ weeks and weeks – <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you left in fact!

OK. I have to finish now. *CSI Miami* has started and I don't want to miss it. Have you finished watching the first series on DVD <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? It's cool, right? I want to marry Adam Rodriguez!

Love,  
 Eva

- 8 Read the e-mail again. Then correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- Eva has written to Sue every week.  
**Eva hasn't written to Sue for a few weeks.**
- 1 Everybody has missed Sue since she left Hawaii.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Everything has changed in Minneapolis.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Becky has just won a yellow belt in judo.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Becky, Marcy, and Eva haven't started planning their trip to Hawaii.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Eva's soccer team has won all its games since Sue left.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 *CSI Miami* has already finished and Eva has missed it.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## Buying presents / souvenirs

### 1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

can I help you? here you are  
I'm looking for a present it's a bestseller  
there's a sale at the moment  
what kind of books

Salesclerk Good morning. Can I help you?  
Julia Yes, please. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for my dad. I'd like to get him a book.  
Salesclerk Well, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ does he read?  
Julia He loves crime stories.  
Salesclerk Has he read *The Scarpetta Factor* by Patricia Cornwell? <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Julia Yes, he's already read it. He loved it.  
Salesclerk What about *Southern Cross* then? It's by the same writer. I've just finished it. It's great!  
Julia Cool! I think he'd like that. How much does it cost?  
Salesclerk It's \$10, but <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. There's a 10% discount so that's \$9.  
Julia Great. I'll take it. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Salesclerk Here's your change and your receipt.  
Julia Thanks.

### 2 Reorder the dialogue.

Dylan Yes. I'm looking for a present for my sister. I'd like to get her a CD.   
Dylan Thanks. Bye.   
Salesclerk What about Rihanna's new CD?   
Salesclerk Here's the receipt and your change. She can change it if she doesn't like it.   
Dylan She's already bought it.   
Dylan Great idea. I'll take it. How much is it?   
Salesclerk Does she like the Black Eyed Peas? They have a new CD.   
Dylan She usually listens to pop music but I don't like it. Do you have any ideas?   
Salesclerk Hello! Can I help you?  1  
Salesclerk It's \$10.99.   
Dylan Here you are.   
Salesclerk What kind of music does she like listening to?

### 3 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

but there's a sale at the moment so it's only \$9.99 ~~can I help you?~~  
here's your change and your receipt.  
is this OK? that's \$11.49. what size is she?  
which one would you like?  
would you like it wrapped as a gift?



Salesclerk Hello. Can I help you?  
Anh Yes, I'd like to buy a T-shirt as a present for my friend, please.  
Salesclerk <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh How much is the one with the big apple on it?  
Salesclerk It's normally \$14.99, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh What sizes do you have?  
Salesclerk There's small, medium, or large. <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh She's a bit bigger than me. I think she's a size medium.  
Salesclerk Here you are. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh OK, I'll take it.  
Salesclerk We sell gift bags and they're \$1.50 each. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh OK, I'll take a gift bag, too.  
Salesclerk <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Anh Here you are.  
Salesclerk Thanks. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

# “His name’s Bond ... James Bond”



## Who created the character of James Bond?

The British writer Ian Fleming created James Bond in his 1953 novel *Casino Royale*. He wrote a series of books about the secret agent between 1953 and 1966. The books have sold more than eighteen million copies in many different languages.

## What is James Bond’s code number?

His code number is 007. The prefix 00 means that James Bond can kill anyone without any problems. Bond takes this code name from the first novel, *Casino Royale*, when he killed two enemies. He has killed more than 150 villains since!

## How does he defeat his enemies?

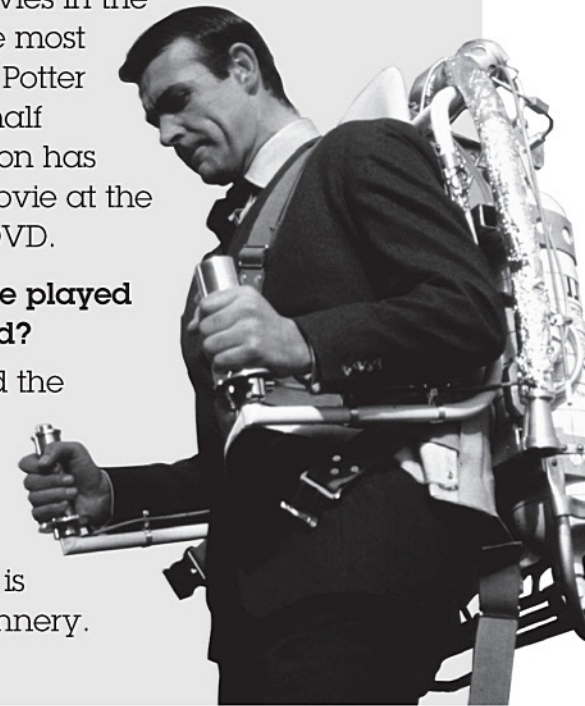
He uses his intelligence, strength, and high-tech weapons and devices. In the early stories these were guns or explosives that looked like everyday objects (a watch or a pen for example). In later stories the devices became more sophisticated and included x-ray glasses and a jetpack.

## How many James Bond movies have there been?

There have been 22 official James Bond movies. The first movie was *Dr. No* in 1962 starring Sean Connery. The Bond movies are the second most successful series of movies in the history of cinema. (The most successful is the Harry Potter series.) In fact, about half of the world’s population has seen a James Bond movie at the movies, on TV, or on DVD.

## How many actors have played the part of James Bond?

Six actors have played the part of James Bond. The current Bond is English actor Daniel Craig, but most people’s favorite Bond is the original – Sean Connery.



### 1 Read the article and find the following:

- James Bond’s code number  
1 \_\_\_\_\_
- the name of the first James Bond movie  
2 \_\_\_\_\_
- the name of the actor who plays James Bond in the most recent movies 3 \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Read the article again. Are the sentences true or false? Correct the false sentences.

Ian Fleming wrote the first James Bond book in 1966.

**False.** Ian Fleming wrote the first James Bond book in 1953.

- 1 James Bond’s code is 007 because he killed seven enemies in the first novel.
- 2 James Bond has killed more than 150 villains.
- 3 James Bond used everyday objects to fight his opponents in the early stories.
- 4 The Bond movies are the most successful series of movies in movie history.

- 5 About 75% of the world’s population has seen a James Bond movie.
- 6 Six actors have played the part of James Bond.
- 7 Sean Connery plays James Bond in the most recent movies.

## Writing

### 3 Write a paragraph about a character from a book or a movie that you like. Think about the following:

- Who is the character?
- What is he / she like? (funny, intelligent, romantic, a superhero ...)
- Who created the character?
- Has the character been in movies, TV shows, comics?
- Why do you like this character?

## Past progressive

### Affirmative and negative

Affirmative	
I was playing	it was playing
you were playing	we were playing
he was playing	you were playing
she was playing	they were playing

Subject + *was / were* + verb in *-ing* form

Negative	
Full form	Short form
I was not playing	I wasn't playing
you were not playing	you weren't playing
he was not playing	he wasn't playing
she was not playing	she wasn't playing
it was not playing	it wasn't playing
we were not playing	we weren't playing
you were not playing	you weren't playing
they were not playing	they weren't playing

Subject +  $\left| \begin{array}{l} \textit{was not (wasn't)} \\ \textit{were not (weren't)} \end{array} \right|$  + verb in *-ing* form

**1 We make the affirmative form of the past progressive with the subject + *be* in the simple past (*was / were*) + the main verb in the *-ing* form.**

The teacher **was writing** on the whiteboard.

**2 We make the negative form of the past progressive with the subject + *be* in the simple past (*was / were*) + *not* + the main verb in the *-ing* form.**

The teacher **wasn't writing** on the whiteboard.

**3 In spoken and written informal English, we usually use the negative short form.**

We **weren't surfing** the Internet.

(= We **were not surfing** the Internet.)

**4 We use the past progressive to talk about actions happening at a specific time in the past.**

Yesterday evening at seven o'clock, I **was watching** TV.

I **was waiting** for the bus at 4 p.m. this afternoon.

**5 We sometimes use time expressions to show the length of time that passed:**

- *from ... to*

Suki was shopping **from 3 to 4 p.m.**

- *between ... and*

We were having breakfast **between 7 and 7:30 a.m.** this morning.

**6 We often use the past progressive to describe a scene, especially when telling a story.**

The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

## Past progressive

### Interrogative and short answers

Interrogative	
Was I playing?	Was it playing?
Were you playing?	Were we playing?
Was he playing?	Were you playing?
Was she playing?	Were they playing?

*Was / Were* | + subject + | verb in *-ing* form

Short answers	
Affirmative	Negative
Yes, I was.	No, I wasn't.
Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.
Yes, he was.	No, he wasn't.
Yes, she was.	No, she wasn't.
Yes, it was.	No, it wasn't.
Yes, we were.	No, we weren't.
Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.
Yes, they were.	No, they weren't.

$\frac{\textit{Yes,}}{\textit{No,}}$  | + subject + |  $\frac{\textit{was / were.}}{\textit{wasn't / weren't.}}$

**1 We make the interrogative form of the past progressive with *Was / Were* + subject + the main verb in the *-ing* form.**

Was she **cooking** dinner?

**2 We make short answers of the past progressive with *Yes*, + subject + *was / were* or *No*, + subject + *wasn't / weren't*.**

"Was she **cooking** dinner?"

"Yes, she **was**." / "No, she **wasn't**."

## while

- 1 We also use the past progressive to talk about two longer actions happening at the same time.

Dave **was washing** the car while the children **were doing** their homework.

- 2 We use *while* to connect the two actions happening at the same time.

Yara **was listening** to her MP3 player **while** her younger brother **was painting**.

- 3 *While* can go between the two actions or at the beginning of the sentence.

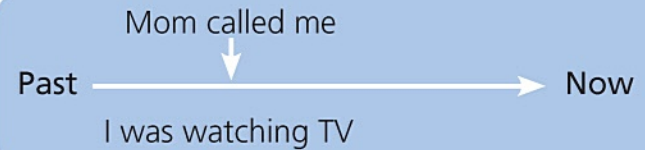
The teacher was writing in his notebook **while** the students were reading.

**While** the teacher was writing in his notebook, the students were reading.

## Past progressive and simple past + when / while

- 1 We also use the past progressive to talk about a longer action that happened in the past and that was interrupted by a shorter action.

I **was watching** TV when Mom called me.



- 2 We can connect the short and longer actions with *when* or *while*.

The teacher **came** into class **while** we **were making** a lot of noise.

They **were walking** down the street **when** they **saw** an accident.

- 3 *When* can come before the shorter action in the simple past or longer action in the past progressive.

Jess was running **when** she fell.

**When** Jess was running, she fell.

- 4 *While* must always come before the longer action in the past progressive.

**While** they were playing cards, someone robbed the house.

## Word list

### Crime

kidnap someone \_\_\_\_\_  
mug someone \_\_\_\_\_  
murder someone \_\_\_\_\_  
pick someone's pocket \_\_\_\_\_  
rob a bank \_\_\_\_\_  
shoplift \_\_\_\_\_  
steal a painting \_\_\_\_\_  
vandalize a building \_\_\_\_\_

### Criminals

kidnapper \_\_\_\_\_  
mugger \_\_\_\_\_  
murderer \_\_\_\_\_  
pickpocket \_\_\_\_\_  
robber \_\_\_\_\_  
shoplifter \_\_\_\_\_  
thief \_\_\_\_\_  
vandal \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## Crime

1 Complete the verbs with the missing letters.



- 1 k i d n a p  
 2 s \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 r \_\_\_\_  
 4 v \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 p \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 m \_\_\_\_

2 Change the underlined words with a word from the box.

kidnapped mugger murderer ~~rob~~  
 pickpocket shoplifter stolen vandalized

The man tried to take money from the bank.  
rob

- 1 You're a very clever man, but I know you shot the professor. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 The woman took three iPods from PC Palace. We found them in her coat.  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 The man showed me a knife and I gave him my wallet. \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 Diane damaged a bus stop. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 A thief has taken a painting from a museum in Paris. \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 A young man took a wallet from a man's jacket on the train. \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 I have taken your uncle. If you give me \$10,000,000, you will see him again.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

Past progressive  
Affirmative and negative

3 Complete the sentences with the correct affirmative or negative form of the past progressive.

Carl and Dan weren't doing (not do) their homework, they were playing (play) table tennis.

- 1 Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ (not sleep), she \_\_\_\_\_ (dance).  
 2 Emily \_\_\_\_\_ (not listen) to music, she \_\_\_\_\_ (paint).  
 3 The cat \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) with a ball, he \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) milk.  
 4 Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (not play) computer games, he \_\_\_\_\_ (read).  
 5 Mom \_\_\_\_\_ (not write) an e-mail, she \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV.

Past progressive  
Interrogative and short answers

4 Complete the dialogue with the correct past progressive forms of the verbs.

Officer Were you sitting (you / sit) in a car in East Street from eight thirty to nine o'clock yesterday morning?

Billy Yes, I was.

Officer 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / talk) with a tall man with dark glasses?

Billy Yes, I 2 \_\_\_\_\_. I was with Terry, the driver.

Officer 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / wait) for someone?

Billy Yes, we 4 \_\_\_\_\_. Our friends were in the bank.

Officer 5 \_\_\_\_\_ (they / rob) the bank?

Billy Well ... yes ... they 6 \_\_\_\_\_.

Officer And, 7 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / wear) a hat?

Billy No, I 8 \_\_\_\_\_. It was a theater mask. I'm also an actor.

Officer Good! You'll enjoy the prison theater group.

**while**

**5 Match the sentence halves.**

- 1 Our neighbors are really noisy. While I was trying to sleep last night ...  e
  - 2 I saw you yesterday. You were walking down Launton Street with your mom while ...
  - 3 Gary knows about the party. He was listening ...
  - 4 I was talking to Mom in the kitchen ...
  - 5 It's not fair. My brother was watching TV ...
  - 6 John's really impolite. He was sending text messages in the theater ...
- a I was waiting for a bus with my dad.
  - b while I was cleaning our room.
  - c while she was cooking dinner.
  - d while we were talking about it on the phone.
  - e they were playing loud music.
  - f while I was acting in the play.

**Past progressive and simple past + when / while**

**6 Complete the dialogue with the past progressive forms of the verbs.**

Officer Please tell me exactly what you saw (see).

Mei Well, I <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV when I <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a noise in the street, so I <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (go) outside. I <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the yard when a man <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (come) out of the bookstore.

Officer <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (he / carry) anything?

Mei Yes, there was a big bag and he <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a gun.

Officer What <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (happen) next?

Mei I <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (call) the police, but the man <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (run) across the park while I <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (talk) with the officer on the phone.

Officer What <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (he / wear)?

Mei Black pants and a black shirt.

Officer And what <sup>13</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (the man / look) like?

Mei Tall ... brown hair ... glasses ... in fact, he <sup>14</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (look) like you!

**Round-up**

**7 Choose the correct answers.**

When the police arrived / were arriving at Danny's house, Danny <sup>1</sup>work / was working at his computer. When the police <sup>2</sup>were arresting / arrested him, Danny <sup>3</sup>stole / was stealing thousands of dollars a month ... using the computers in his bedroom. Danny <sup>4</sup>learned / was learning how to hack one summer vacation when he <sup>5</sup>worked / was working in a computer store. He <sup>6</sup>started / was starting a game with some friends at the store, hacking into their computers. Then one day while Danny <sup>7</sup>was hacking / hacked into a bank's website, he <sup>8</sup>was discovering / discovered how to get people's credit card numbers. After that, it was easy to steal money. First, he <sup>9</sup>downloaded / was downloading thousands of credit card numbers, then he <sup>10</sup>was selling / sold the numbers to criminals. Danny thought he was very intelligent. He was only sixteen years old, but he <sup>11</sup>made / was making lots of money. Then the police <sup>12</sup>were catching / caught Danny and he <sup>13</sup>was going / went to a junior prison for two years. One day while he <sup>14</sup>was sitting / sat in the prison, he had a new idea for a computer program – a program to catch hackers! Now Danny works with the police – he's helping them to catch young hackers.



**8 Read the text again. Write true sentences.**

Danny learned to hack when he was studying ICT.

Danny learned to hack when he was working in a computer store.

- 1 He discovered how to get people's credit card numbers while he was playing a game. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Danny sold credit card numbers to banks. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He was making a lot of money when the police caught him. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Danny helps the police catch shoplifters. \_\_\_\_\_



## Reporting a crime

1 Complete the dialogue with the phrases in the box.

can I help you?

it happened at four o'clock this afternoon  
I want to report a crime ran away stole  
they were they were wearing

Officer Can I help you?

Ian Yes, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Officer What happened?

Ian Some boys <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my bag.

Officer What were you doing?

Ian I was walking along Redmond Street when two boys stopped me.

Officer What did they do?

Ian One boy pushed me and the other boy stole my bag. Then they <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Officer What time did it happen?

Ian <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Officer What was in the bag?

Ian Some books, my wallet, some money, and my keys.

Officer What did the boys look like?

Ian <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen or sixteen.

<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ jeans and jackets.

2 Match the questions and answers.

- 1 How can I help you?
- 2 What happened?
- 3 Where did it happen?
- 4 What time did it happen?
- 5 What did he look like?

c

- a At about three thirty.
- b He was wearing a sweatshirt and jeans.
- c I want to report a crime.
- d Near the river. A lot of people were watching, but nobody helped the woman.
- e A teenager mugged a woman and he stole her bag.



3 You saw a crime and want to report it to the police. Use the information and the picture to complete the conversation.



Crime: Man stole neighbor's computer  
Place: Moore Street  
Time: ten o'clock in the morning, I was making my bed in my bedroom and looking out of the window

Officer Can I help you?

You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer What happened?

You <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer Where was this?

You <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer What time was it?

You <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer What were you doing?

You <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer What was the man wearing?

You <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer What about his hair?

You <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Officer Thank you for the information. It will be very useful for the investigation.

## Reading

# Take our streets back from the gangs!



**Gang crime is a huge problem in the United States. In Chicago there are over 100 street gangs and about 75,000 gang members. It's the same in other big cities. Some of the biggest gangs like the 18<sup>th</sup> Street Gang from Los Angeles, even have members in other countries! The gangs sell drugs and carry guns and they fight other gangs. However, people are slowly finding ways to help these young people and to make the streets safer.**

1 \_\_\_\_\_

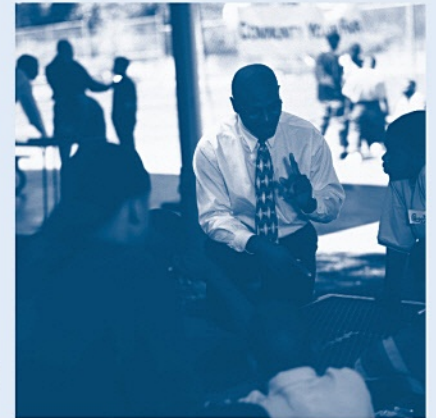
Many rap and hip-hop musicians grew up in dangerous neighborhoods and they have friends or family in the street gangs. Now some of them are helping gang members to become musicians instead of criminals. LA street gangs started to record CDs in the 1990s. People in other cities are now following their example.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

When the police and parents talk about gang violence, most young people don't want to listen, but when an ex-gang member visits a school it's different. The students listen because the ex-gang members really know what life in a gang is like. Ex-gang members also meet gangs on the street and appear on radio and TV, too.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

In some cities gang members can choose to go on an activity vacation at a youth camp. They learn camping skills and make new friends. Youth camps are becoming really popular with gang members because many of them have never left their neighborhoods before. It's a new experience for them and it helps them to think about their lives.



## 1 Match the paragraphs with the headings.

- a Visiting Schools
- b Gangsta Rap
- c Youth Camps

## 2 Read the article again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 How many gang members live in Chicago?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What does the writer say about the 18<sup>th</sup> Street Gang?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who started recording music in the 1990s?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who do students listen to at schools? Why?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What do gang members learn on camps?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Why are youth camps popular with gang members?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Writing

### 3 Look at the photo. Then answer the questions.



- What were the people doing when the photo was taken?
- How do gangs use graffiti?
- Is graffiti a problem in your city?

### 4 Write a story. Use your ideas from exercise 3.

The boys were writing graffiti when the police car stopped behind them ...

## Relative pronouns: *who* / *which* / *that*

### People

The movie is about an explorer. He finds an island.  
The movie is about a man **who** / **that** finds an island.

### Things

She has a rabbit. It lives in the yard.  
She has a rabbit **which** / **that** lives in the yard.  
This is a bridge. It connects Rio de Janeiro and Niterói in Brazil.  
This is a bridge **which** / **that** connects Rio de Janeiro and Niterói in Brazil.

- 1 Relative clauses give important information about a noun. Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns. We use relative pronouns to avoid repeating a name or pronoun.**

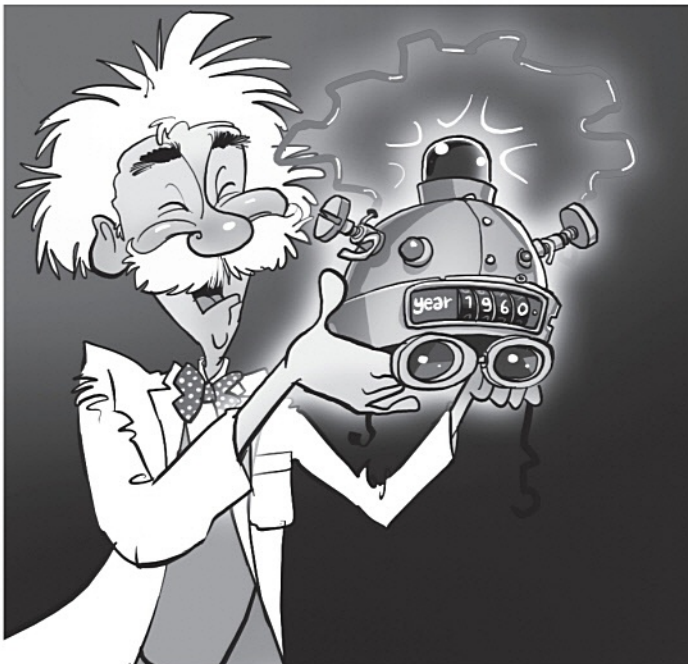
Joe's the new student. He started high school last week.

Joe's the new student **who** / **that** started high school last week.

This is my new computer. I bought it from my friend.

This is my new computer **which** / **that** I bought from my friend.

- 2 We use the relative pronoun *who* for people.**



He wrote about a scientist **who** built a time machine.

- 3 We use the relative pronoun *which* with animals and objects.**

The snakes **which** you have just seen come from South America.

This is the camera **which** Mo Li used to take photos on her vacation.

- 4 We use the relative pronoun *that* with people, animals, and objects. We usually use *that* in informal spoken and written English.**

Martin is the man **that** we saw yesterday.

That is the café **that** is open until 10 p.m.

## The infinitive of purpose

- 1 An infinitive is *to* + the base form of the verb.**

- 2 We use an infinitive to express a person's reason for doing something.**

I went to a café **to buy** a sandwich.

NOT I went to a café for buying a sandwich.

NOT I went to a café for to buy a sandwich.

## Which one ...? / Which ones ...?

- 1 We use *one* instead of a singular noun.  
a small bottle → a small **one**
- 2 We use *ones* instead of a plural noun.  
small bottles → small **ones**
- 3 We can use *Which one ...? / Which ones ...?* as object pronouns in the interrogative form to refer to people or objects. We use them:
  - **when the choice is limited.**  
"There's some orange juice and some water.  
**Which one** would you like?"
  - **to avoid repetition.**  
"Can I have some apples?"  
"**Which ones?** The big ones or the small ones?"



## Word list

### Human achievement – nouns

architect \_\_\_\_\_  
 artist \_\_\_\_\_  
 composer \_\_\_\_\_  
 explorer \_\_\_\_\_  
 inventor \_\_\_\_\_  
 politician \_\_\_\_\_  
 scientist \_\_\_\_\_  
 writer \_\_\_\_\_

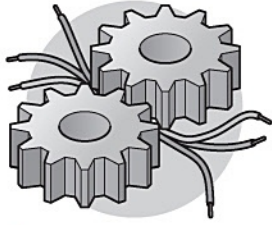
### Human achievement – verbs

build \_\_\_\_\_  
 compose music \_\_\_\_\_  
 debate \_\_\_\_\_  
 design \_\_\_\_\_  
 discover \_\_\_\_\_  
 draw \_\_\_\_\_  
 explore \_\_\_\_\_  
 invent \_\_\_\_\_  
 negotiate \_\_\_\_\_  
 paint \_\_\_\_\_  
 travel \_\_\_\_\_  
 write \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary

## Human achievement

1 Write the names of the professions.



inventor

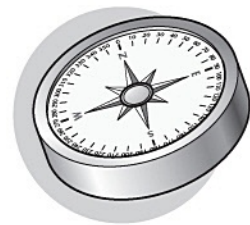
1 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_



2 Write the professions.

John Cabot sailed to Canada in 1497.

explorer

1 Ian Fleming created the character James Bond.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 Wilhelm Conrad Röntgen discovered X-rays.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 Josephine Cochrane created a mechanical dishwasher in 1886. \_\_\_\_\_

4 Frida Kahlo painted in Mexico in the 20<sup>th</sup> century. \_\_\_\_\_

5 Antonio Vivaldi wrote the violin concertos the *Four Seasons*. \_\_\_\_\_

6 Abraham Lincoln was president of the U.S. from 1865 to 1869. \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

Relative pronouns: *who* / *which* / *that*

3 Choose the correct answers.

*Percy Jackson and the Olympians* is a series of fantasy stories which / who are famous all over the world.

1 Rick Riordan is the author which / who wrote *Percy Jackson and the Olympians* books.

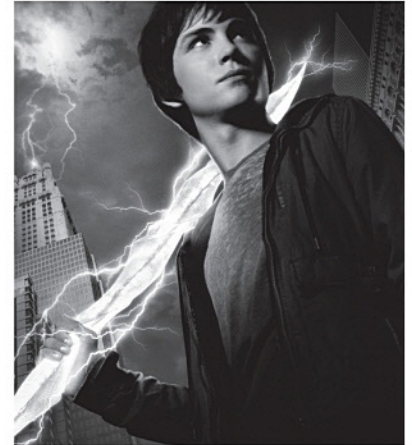
2 The books are about a boy called Percy which / who has dyslexia.

3 He discovers he is the son of a Greek god. He goes to Half-Blood Camp – a camp for children who / which have one Greek God parent.

4 Percy returns to Half-Blood Camp several times and has adventures who / that change his life.

5 Percy meets many people and gods on his adventures who / which help him on his way.

6 In 2010, 20<sup>th</sup> Century Fox made a movie of the first book who / that stars Logan Lerman and Alexandra Daddario.



4 Rewrite the sentences with *who* or *which*.

Masaoka Shiki was a Japanese poet. He lived in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

Masaoka Shiki was a Japanese poet who lived in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

1 *Mona Lisa* is a famous painting. It is in the Louvre Museum in Paris.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2 Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He traveled around Asia in the 13<sup>th</sup> century.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 The Ford Model T was a car. It was very popular in the 1920s.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4 Mark Twain was a writer. He came from the U.S.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5 Amelia Earhart was a pilot. She was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Infinitive of purpose

- 5 Max organized a birthday party yesterday. Here is a list of the things he did. Write sentences to explain why he did them.

### Things to do:

- Get up early – clean the house
- Call Luisa and Jun – invite them to the party
- Go downtown – buy Isabel a present
- Buy some candles – put on the birthday cake
- Go to Kevin's house – borrow some CDs
- make some ice – put in the drinks
- Clean the barbecue – cook the hamburgers

He got up early to clean the house.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_

## Which one ...? / Which ones ...?

- 6 Which word does *one* / *ones* replace? Read the sentences and circle the correct answers.

There are some books on the table. Which ones are yours?

- 1 Which of those girls is your cousin? The small one.
- 2 "Put these CDs in the bag over there." "Which one?"
- 3 The shoes in this store are cool. Which ones do you prefer?
- 4 "Which of those men is your basketball coach?" "The one with a beard."
- 5 The songs on this CD are great! Which one is your favorite?
- 6 This museum has some cool paintings. I like the ones in this room best.

## Round-up

- 7 Complete the text with *who*, *which*, or the infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

change keep say send show stop

### Welcome to e-Gifts.com

Are you someone who likes giving gifts? If you're looking for gift ideas

1 \_\_\_\_\_ are fun and different then e-Gifts.com is for you!

The Waterproof MP3 Player Case is the perfect gift for someone 2 \_\_\_\_\_

wants to listen to music in the bath! It's thick enough

3 \_\_\_\_\_ water out, but it's thin enough

4 \_\_\_\_\_ songs easily!

**Price \$8.99**

Do you know anyone 5 \_\_\_\_\_ can't get out of bed in the morning? Rocket

Alarm Clock is the perfect gift for them! First there's a loud alarm. Then there's a countdown "10, 9, 8 ..."

Finally a rocket launches across your room! You have to get out of bed and put the rocket back on the base

6 \_\_\_\_\_ the alarm!

**Price: \$20.50**

The Drivemessenger is for someone

7 \_\_\_\_\_ spends a lot of time in the car. You use it

8 \_\_\_\_\_ messages to other drivers. Push a button

9 \_\_\_\_\_ "Thanks", "Sorry" or 10 \_\_\_\_\_ a smiley face.

**Price: \$34**



- 8 Complete the questions with *one* or *ones*. Then answer them.

Which one is the most expensive?

The Rocket Alarm Clock.

- 1 Which \_\_\_\_\_ are for children?
- 2 Which \_\_\_\_\_ is only for adults?
- 3 Which \_\_\_\_\_ is the most unusual?

## Discussing what things are for

### 1 Complete the dialogues with the phrases in the box.

for reading to keep what are these?  
 what are they for? what's it for?  
 what's this? ~~what's this gadget?~~

1

A What's this gadget?

B It's a book light.

A 1B It's 2 in the dark. You attach it to a book and you use it to read in bed or in the car.

2

A 3

B It's an external hard drive.

A What's it for?

B It's for storing information from your computer. You use it 4 back-up copies of your computer files.

3

A 5

B They're aqua globes.

A 6

B They're for watering your plants. You put water in them and then you put them in your plant pots.

### 2 Match the questions and answers.

- 1 What's this?
- 2 What's it for?
- 3 What are these?
- 4 What are they for?



- a It's a portable charging station.
- b They're for hanging photos on your wall.
- c They're photo pockets.
- d You use it to charge your cell phone or your MP3 player.

### 3 Write the two dialogues in the correct order.

It's for translating words.  
 It's a travel translator. I want one!  
 They're for keeping your hands warm.  
 They're hand warmers.  
 They're useless! I wear gloves when it's cold!  
 What are they for? What are those?  
 What's it for? ~~What's that?~~



1

A What's that?

B 1A 2B 3A 4

2

A 5B 6A 7B 8A 9

### 4 Write dialogues with the information in the product descriptions.

#### Product description

**Name:** MP3 Sunglasses

**Use:** protect your eyes and listen to music

**Price:** \$80



A What are these?

B 1

A What are they for?

B 2

A How much are they?

B 3

#### Product description

**Name:** e-book

**Use:** read and store digital books

**Price:** \$215

A 4B 5A 6B 7A 8B 9

## Reading

1 Read the article about Einstein. Match the titles to the paragraphs.

Einstein was slow to talk. He didn't like school. He was eccentric.  
He became interested in science when he was five years old. He was a talented musician.



**E**verybody knows that **Albert Einstein** was a genius. He was the German-born scientist who developed the theory of relativity. Not many people know, however, that he didn't speak properly until he was nine years old and that he left school without any qualifications!

Here are five fun facts about the world's smartest genius!

1 Einstein was slow to talk.

As a child, Einstein rarely spoke and his parents were worried that he had a problem. He always thought about what he wanted to say very carefully before he said anything. Some people believe this was a sign that he was a great thinker.

2 \_\_\_\_\_  
When Einstein was a young child his father gave him an object which changed his life - a compass. Einstein was curious about the fact that the compass always pointed in the same direction and he wanted to understand why.

3 \_\_\_\_\_  
Einstein was a good student, but he didn't like school and he left without any qualifications! Later he went to a special school in Switzerland to finish his education. He stayed in Switzerland to attend university and he developed the theory of relativity when he was only 26 years old!

4 \_\_\_\_\_  
Einstein loved music and he was an excellent violinist. He used music to help him relax and think more clearly.

5 \_\_\_\_\_  
Einstein was also well-known for his eccentric behavior. He didn't cut his hair often and he didn't wear socks, for example. He created the stereotype of the "eccentric scientist"!



2 Read the article again. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Who was Albert Einstein?
- 2 Why were Einstein's parents worried when he was a child?
- 3 What was the object that changed Einstein's life?
- 4 Why did Einstein go to a special school in Switzerland?
- 5 What did Einstein use music for?
- 6 What was Einstein also well-known for?

## Writing

3 Write a short biography about an important person of the past. Answer the questions and then write a paragraph about him or her.

- When and where was he / she born?
- What was his / her profession?
- When and why did he / she become famous?
- What other things was he / she famous for?



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.  
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,  
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi  
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi  
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece  
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore  
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of  
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2011

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2011

2016 2015 2014 2013 2012

10 9 8 7 6 5 4

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as  
expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate  
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction  
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department,  
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover  
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and  
their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only.  
Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 446214 3

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publishers would like to thank all the teachers and  
schools who have given generously of their time and expertise during the  
development of the course.

Special acknowledgement is due to Claire Thacker for the Curriculum extra  
lessons.

*Illustrations by:* Adrian Barclay pp12, 20; Claude Bordeleau pp4, 66, 74, 77, 82,  
W23 (ex 6), W28, W29; Paul Daviz pp6, 8, 21, 23, 33, 42, 43, 54, 65, W10, W12,  
W16, W23 (ex8), W34, W40, W44; Bruno Drummond pp5 (ex 10, ex 14), 11, 22,  
46, 47 (ex 7); James Elston pp5 (ex 16), 47 (ex 9), 51; Andy Parker pp84, C1, C5,  
C6, C8, W47; Alan Rowe pp26, 35, 85, W35 (ex6), W36; Fred Van Deelen pp14,  
19, W48, W22; Peters and Zabransky pp10, 38, C7, W25, W45, W46.

*The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce  
photographs:* Alamy Images pp7 (Charlie Chaplin/Photos 12), 10 (ghost town,  
California/Interfoto), 10 (Calico ghost town/Ian Dagnall), 16 (woman on laptop/  
David J. Green), 17 (motorbike/Brad Van Gyzen/BSV Photography), 17 (female  
driver/Stephen Oliver), 18 ('How Clean is Your House'/Jack Carey), 18 (dirty  
dishes/foodfolio), 18 (cloths/Tig Photo), 18 (washing up/Andrew Paterson), 19  
(cleaning sink/Jochen Tack), 19 (cleaning/vario images GmbH & Co.KG), 27  
(paperboy/brt Photo), 28 (New York City/Keith Levit), 30 (graduates/Ellen  
Isaacs), 30 (Wedding reception tables/Atlaspix), 32 (mother & daughter/  
Bubbles Photolibrary), 38 (rainforest/David Noton Photography), 44 (chimneys/  
Paul Glendell), 44 (factory pollution/Jon Bower Pollution), 48 (Seattle/Craig  
Steven Thrasher), 52 (three zorbs/Purestock), 52 (man inside zorb/Bill  
Bachmann), 63 (Vancouver/John Elk III), 64 (souvenir t-shirt/D.Hurst), 64  
(coffee/Photostock-Dieter Heinemann), 64 (caps/Michael Matthews), 69  
(Central Park/Janusz Gniadek), 69 (Broadway adverts/Martin Bond), 70 (bear/  
imagebroker), 70 (Skagway, Alaska/Ron Niebrugge), 86 (John Logie Baird/  
Pictorial Press Ltd), 86 (old CRT TV/Tony Cordoza), 86 (watching TV/R1), 87  
(plasma TV/Judith Collins), 87 (girl with mobile/Datacraft-Sozajiten), 87 (Apple  
iPhone/Cuboimages srl), 87 (solar backpack/Richard Levine), C1 (washing  
machine/mediablitzimages (UK) Limited), C1 (eco cleaning products/Michael  
Willis), C1 (eco-cleaners/Michael Willis), C3 (big bang/Ace Stock Limited), C5  
(Homer bust/Mary Evans Picture Library), W7 (Amish Children/H Mark  
Weidman Photography, Amish horse & cart/Andre Jenny), W7 (Amish school  
bus/Dennis Macdonald), W11 (girl with puppy/Jeff Greenberg), W19 (children  
gardening/David Grossman), W19 (Pine Ridge/L. Zacharie), W29 (Bear Grylls/

Barrie Neil), W48 (electronic dictionary/Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography),  
W48 (hand warmers/Phil Degginger), W49 (Albert Einstein/Interfoto), W49  
(compass/Terry Matthews), W49 (Einstein plays violin/Mary Evans Picture  
Library); Corbis pp30 (trapeze/Fabrice Vallon/Syigma), 44 (polar bear/Richard  
Wear/Design Pics), W13 (Girls Washing Clothes/Underwood & Underwood),  
W41 (computer hacker/Comstock); Getty Images pp17 (cyclist/Aaron Farley/  
Riser), 17 (man crossing/Brick House Pictures/Iconica), 24 (volleyball/Chris  
Salvo/Taxi), 52 (pushing zorb/Bernhard Limberger/Look), 56 (bowling/Dennis  
O'Clair/Stone), 58 (family/Andersen Ross/Iconica), 58 (scuba/Philippe Poulet/  
Taxi), 59 (friends/Leon/Riser), 69 (Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York/  
Bloomberg via Getty Images), 70 (Alaska/Chip Porter/The Image Bank), 80 (Tim  
Berners-Lee/Dani Pozo/AFP), 80 ((CERN) scientists/Fabrice Coffrini/AFP), W13  
(Kitchen maids/Hulton Deutsch), W31 (Teenagers in desert/Ken Chemus/Taxi),  
W43 (arrest/Robert Nickelsberg), W43 (creating graffiti/Oleg Romanov/  
Pressphotos), W43 (music teacher/Susana Gonzalez/Bloomberg), W48 (mp3  
sunglasses Vladimir Rys/Bongarts), W48 (e-book readers/Daniel Acker/  
Bloomberg); iStockphoto pp60 (girl reading/Krystian Kaczmarek), 60 (boy  
reading/Jaimie Duplass); Kobal Collection pp78 (Holmes profile/20TH Century  
Fox), 78 (Holmes and Watson/Hammer), W37 (jetpack/DANJAQ/EON/UA), W37  
(Daniel Craig/MGM/United Artists/Sony), W46 (Percy Jackson & The  
Olympians: The Lightning Thief/Fox 2000 Pictures); OUP pp9 (female student/  
Comstock), 16 (teens by lockers/Digital Vision), 28 (Statue of Liberty/  
Photodisc), 31 (smiling woman/Corbis), 32 (businesswoman/Image Source), 44  
(traffic jam/Corbis), 53 (students/Somos), 68 (London Eye/Digital Vision), 87  
(laptop/David Cook), 87 (backpack/Dennis Kitchen Studio, Inc.), 89 (teen girl/  
Design Pics); PA Photos: W25 (twister/Wayne Hanna/AP); Photolibrary pp19  
(maid/Uppercut Images), 31 (smiling woman/Blend Images RF), 31 (Young man  
smiling/PhotoAlto), 32 (woman with palm-top/Blend Images RF), 32 (computer  
lesson/Corbis), 34 (teens with laptops/Corbis), C1 (oven cleaning/Digital  
Vision); PunchStock pp (Teenage girl/Photodisc), 19 (woman dusting/  
moodboard), 32 (architect/Tetra), 32 (lazy teen/Corbis), 64 (snow globe/Corbis),  
87 (notebook/Photodisc), W31 (camping/Brand X Pictures); Reuters Pictures  
p48 (summer hail storm/Andrew Sheargold); Rex Features pp24 (teen with  
remote/Carson Ganci/Design Pics Inc), 90 (Wesley Autrey/Sipa Press);  
Shutterstock pp C3 (north sky star constellation/Zlatko Guzmic), C3 (south sky  
star constellation/Zlatko Guzmic).

*Cover photograph by:* Getty (Photodisc)

## Irregular verbs

Base form	Simple past	Past participle
be	was / were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burned, burnt	burned, burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learned, learnt	learned, learnt
leave	left	left

Base form	Simple past	Past participle
let	let	let
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	showed, shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelled, smelt	smelled, smelt
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelled, spelt	spelled, spelt
spend	spent	spent
spin	spun	spun
spread	spread	spread
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

# Got it!

## Everything you could possibly need



### Student Pack

- Integrated **Workbook**
- CD-ROM** for interactive practice
- Access to online **KET practice test**
- Guided discovery approach to new language
- Self-assessment pages correlated to the  
Common European Framework of Reference
- Cross-curricular project work

Got it!



### iTools

- Digital **Student Book** for use with interactive whiteboard
- Workbook** answers at the touch of a button
- Video** lessons
- 50 printable **worksheets**
- Editable **tests**
- Printable **KET practice test**

Got it!



### Extra digital support

- DVD** with cultural documentary clips
  - Test Builder** for flexible assessment options
  - Extra **Online Skills Practice** delivered via a Learning Management System\*
- \*Only available with Got it! PLUS

Got it!



### Teaching essentials

- Teacher's Book**
- Audio CDs**

Got it!



## Get it all with Got it!

Oxford › making  digital sense

OXFORD  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt



for all your  
testing needs  
online go to

oxfordenglishtesting.com



OXFORD ENGLISH  
ISBN 978-0-19-446217-4



9 780194 462174